

۸ لاپورد یربراکی امنهار

Drupal<sup>TM</sup>

USER GUIDE

---

۸ لاپورد یربراکی امنه‌ار

---

# تسرهف

|                                                    |    |
|----------------------------------------------------|----|
| i. همدم                                            | 1  |
| i.1. راشتنا زوجم                                   | 1  |
| i.2. فاده و بطاخم                                  | 1  |
| i.3. یدلنامزاس                                     | 1  |
| i.4. تالکشم شرازگ                                  | 1  |
| i.5. امنهار نی دعاوق                               | 1  |
| i.6. امنهار ویرانس                                 | 1  |
| 1. لاپورد کرد                                      | 1  |
| 1.1. اوتحم تیری دم متسیس کی ناونع هب لاپورد: موهفم | 1  |
| 1.2. اهلنوزفا: موهفم                               | 3  |
| 1.3. اهللاق: موهفم                                 | 4  |
| 1.4. اهاعی زوت: موهفم                              | 5  |
| 1.5. هداد عاون: موهفم                              | 6  |
| 1.6. لاپورد هژورپ: موهفم                           | 7  |
| 1.7. لاپورد زوجم: موهفم                            | 9  |
| 2. تیاس یحارط                                      | 11 |
| 2.1. بللق کی رد اهلهی حان: موهفم                   | 11 |
| 2.2. تیاس حرط یزیراهمانرب                          | 12 |
| 2.3. یی اوتحم ی اهاتی دوجوم و اهلیف: موهفم         | 14 |
| 2.4. رالوژام ی اوتحم: موهفم                        | 16 |
| 2.5. یی اوتحم راتخاس یزیراهمانرب                   | 17 |
| 2.6. یراتساری و راکشدرگ: موهفم                     | 20 |
| 3. بصلن                                            | 22 |
| 3.1. رورس ی اهزای نشیپ: موهفم                      | 22 |
| 3.2. ی فاضا ی اهرابا: موهفم                        | 23 |
| 3.3. بصلن یارب ی زاساهدام                          | 25 |
| 3.4. بصلن دنی آرف یارجا                            | 28 |
| 4. تیاس هیاپ یدن برکیپ                             | 35 |
| 4.1. Concept: Administrative Overview              | 35 |
| 4.2. Editing Basic Site Information                | 38 |
| 4.3. Installing a Module                           | 40 |
| 4.4. Uninstalling Unused Modules                   | 41 |
| 4.5. Configuring User Account Settings             | 44 |
| 4.6. Configuring the Theme                         | 47 |
| 5. هداس هخفص تیری دم                               | 52 |
| 5.1. Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs             | 52 |
| 5.2. Creating a Content Item                       | 53 |
| 5.3. Editing a Content Item                        | 55 |
| 5.4. Editing with the In-Place Editor              | 57 |
| 5.5. Designating a Front Page for your Site        | 59 |

|       |                                                                       |     |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 5.6.  | Concept: Menu .....                                                   | 61  |
| 5.7.  | Adding a Page to the Navigation .....                                 | 62  |
| 5.8.  | Changing the Order of Navigation .....                                | 65  |
| 6.    | ی او ت ح م ر ا ت خ ا س می ظ ن ت .....                                 | 68  |
| 6.1.  | Adding a Content Type .....                                           | 68  |
| 6.2.  | Deleting a Content Type .....                                         | 73  |
| 6.3.  | Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type .....                           | 75  |
| 6.4.  | Concept: Reference Fields .....                                       | 80  |
| 6.5.  | Concept: Taxonomy .....                                               | 81  |
| 6.6.  | Setting Up a Taxonomy .....                                           | 83  |
| 6.7.  | Adding a Reference Field .....                                        | 88  |
| 6.8.  | Concept: Forms and Widgets .....                                      | 91  |
| 6.9.  | Changing Content Entry Forms .....                                    | 92  |
| 6.10. | Concept: View Modes and Formatters .....                              | 96  |
| 6.11. | Changing Content Display .....                                        | 97  |
| 6.12. | Concept: Image Styles .....                                           | 100 |
| 6.13. | Setting Up an Image Style .....                                       | 101 |
| 6.14. | Concept: Responsive Image Styles .....                                | 105 |
| 6.15. | Concept: Text Formats and Editors .....                               | 106 |
| 6.16. | Configuring Text Formats and Editors .....                            | 107 |
| 7.    | ی ر ب ر ا ک ی ا ه ا ب ا س ح ت ی ر ی د م .....                         | 109 |
| 7.1.  | Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions .....                          | 109 |
| 7.2.  | Concept: The User Account .....                                       | 110 |
| 7.3.  | Creating a Role .....                                                 | 112 |
| 7.4.  | Creating a User Account .....                                         | 113 |
| 7.5.  | Assigning Permissions to a Role .....                                 | 117 |
| 7.6.  | Changing a User's Roles .....                                         | 119 |
| 7.7.  | Assigning Authors to Content .....                                    | 122 |
| 8.    | ا ه ا ک ا ل ب .....                                                   | 125 |
| 8.1.  | Concept: Blocks .....                                                 | 125 |
| 8.2.  | Creating A Custom Block .....                                         | 125 |
| 8.3.  | Placing a Block in a Region .....                                     | 128 |
| 9.    | ز ا ه د ا ف ت س ا ب ت س ر ه ف د ا ج ی ا Views .....                   | 131 |
| 9.1.  | Concept: Uses of Views .....                                          | 131 |
| 9.2.  | Concept: The Parts of a View .....                                    | 132 |
| 9.3.  | Creating a Content List View .....                                    | 134 |
| 9.4.  | Duplicating a View .....                                              | 138 |
| 9.5.  | Adding a Block Display to a View .....                                | 143 |
| 10.   | د و خ ت ی ا س ر د ر ک ه ن ا ب ز د ن چ .....                           | 149 |
| 10.1. | Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation ..... | 149 |
| 10.2. | Adding a Language .....                                               | 150 |

|        |                                                                  |     |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 10.3.  | Configuring Content Translation .....                            | 152 |
| 10.4.  | Translating Content .....                                        | 155 |
| 10.5.  | Translating Configuration .....                                  | 157 |
| 11.    | دوخ تیاس یزاسی شرافس و عسوت .....                                | 161 |
| 11.1.  | Finding Modules .....                                            | 161 |
| 11.2.  | Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode .....                    | 166 |
| 11.3.  | Downloading and Installing a Module from <i>Drupal.org</i> ..... | 169 |
| 11.4.  | Finding Themes .....                                             | 172 |
| 11.5.  | Downloading and Installing a Theme from <i>Drupal.org</i> .....  | 175 |
| 11.6.  | Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files .....                 | 179 |
| 11.7.  | Concept: Development Sites .....                                 | 182 |
| 11.8.  | Making a Development Site .....                                  | 183 |
| 11.9.  | Using Composer and Git to Download Files .....                   | 186 |
| 11.10. | Deploying New Site Features .....                                | 189 |
| 11.11. | Synchronizing Configuration Versions .....                       | 192 |
| 12.    | تالگشم لح و یریگشیپ .....                                        | 195 |
| 12.1.  | Concept: Cache .....                                             | 195 |
| 12.2.  | Clearing the Cache .....                                         | 196 |
| 12.3.  | Concept: Data Backups .....                                      | 198 |
| 12.4.  | Concept: Log .....                                               | 200 |
| 12.5.  | Concept: Status Report .....                                     | 201 |
| 13.    | یرادهگن و تیئم .....                                             | 203 |
| 13.1.  | Concept: Cron .....                                              | 203 |
| 13.2.  | Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks .....                         | 204 |
| 13.3.  | Concept: Security and Regular Updates .....                      | 206 |
| 13.4.  | Keeping Track of Updates .....                                   | 208 |
| 13.5.  | Updating the Core Software .....                                 | 209 |
| 13.6.  | Updating a Module .....                                          | 211 |
| 13.7.  | Updating a Theme .....                                           | 215 |
| 14.    | رخ آنخس .....                                                    | 218 |
| 14.1.  | Connecting with the Community .....                              | 218 |
| 14.2.  | Getting Support .....                                            | 220 |
| 14.3.  | Learning More .....                                              | 221 |
|        | ناگژاو .....                                                     | 223 |
|        | هیامن .....                                                      | 232 |
|        | همیض .....                                                       | 242 |
| A.     | A.1. Guide-Wide Attributions .....                               | 242 |

# همدم

## i.1. راشتنا زوجم

تیارلیپک لماش هک هدش هتشون لاپورد سروس [Creative Commons License](#) اب قباطم دنوتلم و تسا نآ یدارفنا ناگدننکاتکراشم ۲۰۱۵ تا ۲۰۱۶ هلمج زا دنس نیارد هحفص ره دریگ رارق هدافتسا دروم (CC BY-SA 2.0) Attribution-ShareAlike 2.0 شایمان ارهحفص نآ ناگدننکاتکراشم تسرهف هک تساهحفص یاهتنا ردتابع کی لماش هحفص نی مه هب هژورپ تیری دم و همچرت، یلک شیری و یارب دینوتلم نی نچمه. دهلم [A.1, "Guide-Wide Attributions"](#) دینک هعجارم.

دجم عی زوت و یریغت، یریگاتشونور ناکما یدرف ره هب، تساهب هباشم هک [CC BY-SA](#) زوجم دندرگ تیاعر ری ز دعاوق هک یمادام، دهلم ار راک نیامامت ای شخب رد دوجوم تاریغت

- دینک هدهاشم ار زوجم رتشیب تاعالطایارب دینک مهارف ار بسانم رابتعا
- دینک مهارف زوجم هب دنویپ کی
- ریخ ای دن اهتفرگ تروص تاریغت ای دینک صخشم
- دی ده هئارا دنس نی مه زوجم اب قباطم ار دوخ راک

### ناگدننکاتکراشم

[Red Crackle](#) زا [Jojoy Alphonso](#) و [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هحفص نی شیری و و شرانگ [#####](#) یدارفنا ناگدننکاتکراشم طسوت ۲۰۰۰ تا ۲۰۱۶ تیاریپک [##### # #####](#) تساهتفرگ تروص [#####](#)

رتشیب تایئزج یارب یدارفنا ناگدننکاتکراشم طسوت ۲۰۱۵ تا ۲۰۱۶ تیاریپک: تیاریپک نالعا [CC BY-SA 2.0](#) زوجم تحت دینک هدهاشم ار [i.1, "#####"](#)

## i.2. فاده و بطاخم

لاپورد یوتحم تیری دم متسیس زا یلقادح شنادهک تساهدش هتشون یدارفنا یارب رتشیب امنهار نی تاسبو کی یوتحم یرادهگن و، یزاساتیاس، تیری دم، بصلن تراهم اهان هب امنهار لخاد تاعوضوم. دنراد راک هبرجت لاپورد نی شیری پاهلخسن اب هک تسایناربراک یارب نی نچمه امنهار. دهلم شزوم آری لاپورد دینک یناسرزورب یلعف هخسن یارب ار دوخ شنادهواخلیم و دن اهتشاد



تاحیضوت هک — دی‌زادنیب ##### هب ی‌هاگن دی‌هاوخب دی‌اش دی‌زادرپ‌لم‌ه‌ل‌اطم هب هک روط نی‌مه لم‌اش ار یرتشیب تائی‌زج هک یتاع‌وضوم هب دنویپ و امن‌ه‌ار نی‌ا تاح‌ال‌طصا زا کی ره هرابرد رصت‌خم ده‌لم‌ه‌ئارا، دن‌وش‌لم‌ه‌ئارا.

ناگدن‌کات‌کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هت‌شون

## i.4. تال‌کشم شر‌ازگ

### فاده‌ا

ه‌ل‌م‌ج‌زا، امن‌ه‌ار نی‌ا اب ل‌کشم کی شر‌ازگ:

- دن‌ت‌س‌ین درادن‌ات‌سا ی‌اه‌وی‌ش هب هک هت‌س‌د نی‌ا ی‌ت‌س‌ردان تاع‌ال‌طا
- دن‌کلی‌من راک هک ی‌ی‌اه‌لم‌اگ
- دن‌ت‌س‌ین ی‌کی ن‌تم ی‌اوت‌حم اب هک ع‌وضوم اب طب‌ترم ری‌واصت
- م‌وه‌ف‌مان هت‌شون
- ده‌د ح‌ی‌ضوت دن‌اوت‌لم‌ن‌تم زا رت‌هب ری‌وصت هک ی‌ی‌اه‌اج
- ح‌ی‌حص تاح‌ی‌ضوت دوجو مدع
- اه‌ان آ‌دوجو مدع و زاین دروم ی‌شن‌اد ی‌اه‌زاین‌شیپ
- ی‌شی‌امن و ی‌شر‌اگن، ی‌روت‌سد ی‌اه‌اطخ
- اطخ ی‌اه‌دن‌ویپ

### اه‌لم‌اگ

1. دن‌شاب هدش حرطم ل‌کشم لم‌اش هک یتاع‌وضوم ای ع‌وضوم زا ی‌رادرب‌ات‌ش‌اددای
2. [ت‌سا نی‌ا ت‌خ‌اس نام‌زن‌ون‌کا، دی‌رادن ی‌رب‌راک با‌س‌ح رگا] [Drupal.org](#) هب دورو
3. [User Guide issues ## Drupal.org](#) ه‌ج‌ف‌ص هب ه‌ع‌ج‌ارم
4. دش‌اب هدشن شر‌ازگ ی‌رگ‌ید درف طسوت نون‌کا مه‌امش ل‌کشم هک دین‌ک ل‌صاح نان‌ی‌م‌طا
  - امش ع‌وضوم ای‌آ‌دین‌ی‌ب‌ب‌ات دین‌ک شی‌وپ ار *Summary* نوت‌س، دراد دوجو زاب *issue* دن‌چ اه‌نت رگا کی‌ل‌ک اب دین‌اوت‌لم‌ه‌ک دین‌اوت‌لم‌ه‌ک *issue* دن‌چ ات دش‌اب م‌زال ت‌سا ن‌کم. ری‌خ ای دن‌ه‌لم‌ه‌ش‌ش‌وپ ار دین‌ک ه‌ل‌اطم ار نی‌ا *Summary* نوت‌س رد دوجوم دن‌ویپ ی‌ور رب
  - هک ی‌ع‌وضوم ناو‌نع ای دوخ رظن دروم ه‌ژاودی‌ل‌ک ن‌درک دراو اب، دش‌اب ی‌نال‌وط، زاب *issue* ت‌سر‌ه‌ف رگا *issue* دادعت ندش رت‌م‌ک هب *Search* ی‌ور کی‌ل‌ک و *Search for* ه‌ب‌ع‌ج ل‌خ‌اد دراد رارق ا‌ج‌ن‌آ رد ل‌کشم رد ل‌کشم هک دی‌زادرپ‌ب *issue* ه‌ل‌اطم هب ای ه‌درک ی‌سر‌رب ار ل‌کشم ه‌صال‌خ ه‌اگن‌آ. دین‌ک ت‌رداب‌م ت‌سا ا‌ج‌ن‌آ



5. کیلک *Create a new issue* یور، تساهدشن شرازگ نونکا مه امش رظن دروم لکشم هک دی تفایرد رگا دینک رپ ریزق باطم ار لکشم شرازگ و دینک

+

| Field name    | Explanation                                   | Example value                                                                                                        |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Title         | Short summary of the problem you found        | Instructions in "Adding a Content Type" do not work                                                                  |
| Category      | Type of issue being reported                  | Bug report                                                                                                           |
| Version       | Version of the guide you found the problem in | 8.x-0.x-dev                                                                                                          |
| Issue summary | Details of the problem you found              | In the "Adding a Content Type" topic, in step 3, when I clicked <i>Save</i> , I got the following error message: ... |

1. شرازگ رد ریزق تاعالطا هک دیبای نانیمطا و دیناوخب ددجم ار دیاهدرک دراو هک *Title* و *Issue summary* تساهتفرگ رارق امش:
  - دیاهدرک ادیپ هک یلکشم زالماک حیضوت کی
  - تساهدش ادیپ نآ رد لکشم هک یتاعوضوم ای عوضوم مان
  - تسین یسیلگنا رگا دیناوخیم نآ هب ار امنهار هک ینابز
  - لماش ار لکشم هک یتاحفص ای ححفص هب دنویپ، دیناوخیم یرگید تیاس یور ار امنهار رگا دنوشوم
2. دینک کیلک *Save* یور *issue* داچای یارب.
3. اب، تساوخ امش زایرتشیب تاعالطا هژورپ ناریدم زایکی رگا. دینزب رس *issue* هب زور دنچ یط دیهدخساپ نآ هب هاگدید زاهدافتسا.

ناگدننکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هتشون

## i.5. امنهار نیادعواق

### اهزاینشیپ و تایضرف

دیریگلیم رظن رد ار ریزی اهزاینشیپ و تایضرف امنهار نیادعواق

- رتشیب تایئج یارب؛ تساهدش یدنباهقبط تاعوضوم ساسا رب امنهار نیادعواق [i.3. #####](#) دن تسه ##### تمسق کی لماش تاعوضوم یرایسب. دینک دهدهاشم ار ["#####"](#)

شناد ی‌خرب. دزادرپایم ی‌لصا عوضوم رتهب کرد ی‌ارب ی‌بن‌اج تاعوضوم ریاس ندرک تسرهف هب هک  
 رتشیب تایئ‌ج ی‌ارب؛ تسارظن دم‌زین دوشلی‌من هدادش‌شوپ هک هنی‌م‌زلشی‌پ  
[#### i.2, "##### #](#)  
[#####](#) دینک ده‌اشم ار [#####](#).

- دی‌اب هک ی‌ی‌اهراک ی‌نعی، دن‌زادرپایم [#####](#) ندرک تسرهف هب نی‌رمت تاعوضوم ی‌رای‌سب  
 دی‌ده‌ماچنا دوختیاس ی‌ور نی‌رمت نی‌ا نداد‌ماچنا زالب‌ق.
- هاگشورف ی‌ارب تیاس کی‌داجی رب نی‌تبم ی‌وی‌رانس اب طب‌ترم، تیاس ی‌اهزای‌نشی‌پ تاصخشم  
 [دینک ده‌اشم ار [#### i.6, "#####](#) رتشیب تایئ‌ج ی‌ارب] تسای‌زرواشک تال‌وص‌حم  
 هت‌شاد‌دای هب ار دوخ‌زاین دروم تارویی‌غت دی‌اب اما، دی‌زاس‌ق‌ب‌طنم دوخ‌وی‌رانس اب دین‌اوت‌لی‌م ار اهن‌یرمت  
 دش‌اب‌ق‌ب‌طنم نی‌رمت کی‌اب امش‌تیاس رگا دی‌شاب.
- ی‌ن‌م‌ض‌زاین‌شی‌پ کی، [#### 3.4, "#####](#) زا سپ ی‌درب‌راک تاعوضوم مامت ی‌ارب  
 دی‌وش‌ن‌آ‌دراو ی‌لصا ی‌رب‌راک باس‌ح اب و دی‌شاب هدرک ب‌صن وراوت‌حم تی‌ری‌دم رازفا‌لم‌رن دی‌اب: دراد‌دو‌جو  
 ی‌اه‌زو‌ج مامت ض‌رف‌اش‌پ تروص هب هک، دی‌ا‌ه‌درک داجی تیاس ب‌صن ماگ‌نه هک ی‌رب‌راک باس‌ح دن‌ام [دراد‌ار‌م‌زال  
 زاین‌شی‌پ شناد‌دی‌اب، دینک ارچا نی‌رمت کی‌رد ار اها‌ماگ مامت و ه‌ع‌لا‌طم بی‌ترت هب ار تاعوضوم مامت رگا
- دی‌شاب هدرک ه‌ع‌لا‌ظم زین ار تیاس ی‌اهزای‌نشی‌پ و و

## ین‌تم دعاوق

دن‌اهدش هدافت‌سا امن‌هار نی‌ا ن‌تم رد ری‌ز دعاوق

- ی‌ارب هم‌ادا رد ار شی‌ام‌پ تم‌سق. تسامش تیاس‌بو ی‌لصا ین‌اشن ی‌ان‌عم هب *example.com* ین‌اشن  
 دینک ده‌اشم دوختیاس ی‌ل‌خ‌اد ی‌اهلی‌اشن هراب‌رد رتشیب تایئ‌ج
- *Save* ی‌ور کی‌لک: دن‌نام دی‌آ‌لم *italics* تروص هب دین‌ی‌ب‌لی‌م دوختیاس ی‌رب‌راک ط‌بار رد هک ی‌ن‌تم  
 ی‌لب‌ق عوضوم کی‌رد هک ی‌ن‌تم نه، تسای‌ل‌صا رازفا‌لم‌رن رد دو‌جو م ن‌تم دروم رد اهن‌ت نی‌ا. *configuration*.  
 دین‌ی‌ب‌ب ی‌لم‌ع‌ل‌اروت‌سد نی‌ن‌چ تسا ن‌کم‌م، شی‌اری‌و هراب‌رد ی‌عوضوم رد، هن‌ومن ی‌ارب. تسا هدش‌دراو  
 About اما، دش‌اب کی‌لاتی تروص هب تسا ن‌کم‌م *Edit* [دینک کی‌لک About ه‌ح‌ف‌ص ی‌ال‌اب رد *Edit* ی‌ور  
 [تسا هدش‌داجی ی‌لب‌ق عوضوم کی‌رد About ه‌ح‌ف‌ص هک ارچ تسین
- دن‌بای‌لی‌م شی‌ام‌ن *italics* تروص هب دی‌ج تاحال‌ط‌صا و اهالی‌اف مان، اهلی‌اشن
- دبای‌لی‌م شی‌ام‌ن *monospace* تروص هب دوش‌دراو نام‌رف [ط‌خ طب‌حم رد روت‌سد بل‌اق رد دی‌اب هک ی‌ن‌تم  
 دن‌نام:  

```
drush cr
```
- هک [دوش‌لی‌م هدافت‌سا اهالی‌اف ی‌زاس‌ه‌ری‌خ‌ن ی‌ارب ی‌ل‌ح‌م دروم رد هشی‌مه *directory* هم‌لک، امن‌هار نی‌ا رد  
 [دن‌ن‌ک‌لی‌م هراشا ن‌آ هب *folder* مان اب دارفا ی‌خرب

## شیامیپ

ی تیری دم طبار رد حفص دنچ ای کی هب هک تسرا زاین، امنهار نیاردی نیرمت تاعوضوم رثکا مچنا یارب رازفالمرن هک ینامز دینی بب اهال عمل اروتسد رد نیاب هباشم یزیچ تسرا نکمم. دینک هعجارم دوختیاس :تثاد دیهاوخ یرتهب کرد دینک بصنار

دیورب (*admin/structure/taxonomy*) *Manage\_#* ی تیری دم یونم رد

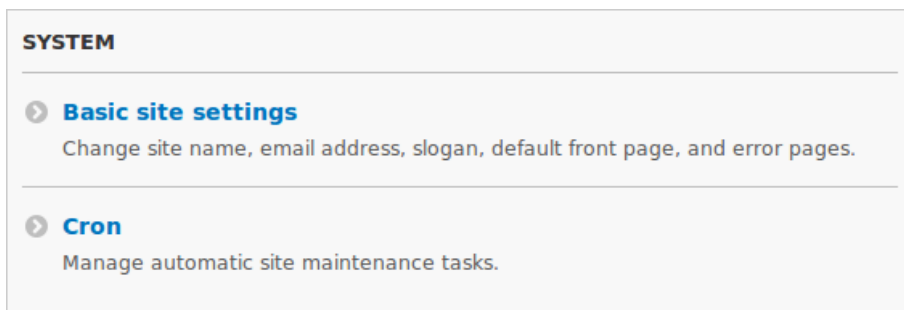
نیادیراد بصنار *Toolbar* هنوزفا هک دنراذگلم نیارب ار ضررف نیاریظن شیامیپی اهال عمل اروتسد ریسم هب دیاب *Manage* هنیزگیور کیلک زاسپ حفصیالاب یونم راون رد هک تسرا نیاینعم هب هنومن *Structure* زا تسارابع حفص یناشن ریسم نیارد و دیورب *Taxonomy* سپس *http://example.com/admin/structure/taxonomy* دشاب *http://example.com* امش تیاس هیاپ یناشن رگا.



دینکلیم هدهاشم یرگید هنومن اچنیارد:

دیورب (*admin/config/system/site-information*) *Manage\_#* ی تیری دم یونم رد

و دینک ادیپار *Configuration\_#* *Manage* یور کیلک زاسپ، هنومن نیارد *http://example.com/admin/config/system/site-information* ریسم رد اهتنا رد. دینک کیلک *Site information* یور دیری گلم رارق *information*.



رد "Add" ی اهلهم کد زای رایسب، دینکلیم هدافتسا ی تیری دم درادناتسا بلق زارگا: رگید هتکن کی ی اوتخم ندوزفا همکد *admin/content* رد، هنومن یارب. دنوشلم هداشیامن + تمالع اب نیای تیری دم طبار تقیقح رد و تسابلق رب ینتبم لمع نی، هچرگا. دبایلم شیامن *Add new content* + تروص هب دیج

رد سب. دوشلی من هدناوخن اوخه حفس کی طسوت امازلا، هنومن یارب تسین همکد یورن تم زا یتمسق دوشلی من یاهراشا اهلمکد یور + تمالع هب، امنهار نی

## اهامرف ندرکرپ

رثکا رد. دینک رپ ار مرف کی نآ رد دیاب هک دنتسه یمماگ لماش امنهار نی یی رمت تاعوضوم زا یرایسب رارق نآ یاهدلیف رد دیاب هک اهرادقم زا یلودج هارمه هب، دوشلیم هدادش یامن مرف زا ریوصت کی، دراوم ار تیاس تاعالطا هک، دوشلیم عورش ریز تروص هب هک دینیبب ار یلودج تسانکم، هنومن یارب. دیهد

دهلیم حیضوت (*information*) *Configuration > \_System\_ > Site information (admin/config/system/site-* رد نآ هب طوبرم مرف یارب

| Field name | Explanation       | Example value          |
|------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| Site name  | Name of your site | Anytown Farmers Market |

مان کی. دیهد رارق نآ رد ار دوختیاس مان و هدرک ادیپ مرف رد ار *Site name* دلیف، لودج نیازا هداقتسا یارب هاگشورف یارب تیاسبو کی داجی ویرانس هب هک "Anytown Farmers Market" # زا تساترابع هنومن رتشیب تایئزج یارب [#### i.6, "##### #####"](#) تساطبترم امنهار نیارد هداش یزرواشک. دینک دهاشم ار

## ناگدننگات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش شیریو و هتشنون

## امنهار ویرانس i.6.

ورشیپ هژورپ ویرانس. تسارثوم رایسب تیاسبو یعقاو هژورپ کی هدی، امنهار نیاهل اطم ماگنه دوشلیم لماش ار طبترم یاهدنویپ و میهافم زا یاهعومجم

لحم هرابرد تاعالطاشیامن دنزاین تیاس. دیتسه یزرواشک رازاب کی یارب تیاسبو دیلوت لاح رد امش یسرهف دراد زاین نیچمه. نآ هچخیرات هرابرد About هحفص کی هارمه هب تسارازاب یراک یاهتاعاس و دامن کی هلمج زا دنشاب دوخ مالقا شیریو هب رداق دیاب ناگدنشورف. دهدش یامن ار ناگدنشورف زا دنناوتب دیاب تیاس ناگدننگاه جارم. دننک لاسرا ار دوخ یاهلمعلاروتسد دنناوتب و ریوصت ای ار تسادوجوم رازاب رد هک مادک ره زاین دروم هیلوا داوم و هدرک شیرامیپ فل تخم یاهلمعلاروتسد نیب ویلصا تاحفص نیاربانب، دننکلیم تبحص یرگید نابز هب امش تیاس ناربراکیخرپ. دننک صرخشم و دنراد همجرت هب زاین ناگدنشورف

## ناگدننگات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش شیریو و هتشنون

# ل اپورد کرد 1. ل صرف

## اوتحم تیری دم متسیسی کی ناو نع هب ل اپورد :م وهفم 1.1

### تسیچ اوتحم تیری دم متسیسی

فدح و شیری و راشتنا، ندوزفا هزاجا ناربراک هب هک تسای رازفالمرن (CMS) اوتحم تیری دم متسیسی کی یزیمور هئایار ای تلبت، دنمشوه یشوگ رد دوجوم بو رگورم زا هدافتسا اب ار تیاسبو کی اوتحم هک یاهنایاری ورن آیهاتپیرکسا و دوشلیم هتشون تیپیرکسا نابزکی هب رازفالمرن، الومعم. دهلیم هدادلهگیاپ رد الومعم تیاسبو تامیظنت و اوتحم. ددرگلیم بصلن، تسا نآ رد زین رورس بو و هدادلهگیاپ ار زاین دروم تاعالطا تیپیرکسا، دوشلیم رورسابو هب هک یاهحفص تساوخرده یازا هب و دنوشلیم هریخ

ای دن تسه CMS زا یوزج هک CSS، تیپیرکسا اواج، ریوصت یاهلیاف ##### و هدادلهگیاپ زا دوش هتخاس رظن دروم هحفص ات دنکلیم بی کرت [دن اهدش دراو نآ هب

، هدش هتشون نآ هب هک سی و نهامانرب نابز، دوشلیم ارچا نآ یور CMS هک یلماعلمتسیسی بی کرت اب دنکلیم شزادرپ ار تیفایرد یاهتساوخرده هک یورسابو و دنکلیم هریخ دار نآ تاعالطا هک یاهدادلهگیاپ

هدادهگیاپ، یچاپ آ رورسابو، سکونیل لماعلمتسیسی بی کرت نیرتال وادتم؛ دوشلیم هتخانش ##### مان

دوشلیم هتخانش *LAMP Stack* مان اب PHP سی و نهامانرب نابز و MySQL

### تسیچ ل اپورد

ندوزفا ناکما هک رالوژام یحارط هارمه هب، تسا LAMP هتشپ ساسا رب ریذپافاطعنا CMS کی ل اپورد

فدح و بصلن اب ار تیاسبو رهاظ ریغت ناکما و ##### فدح و بصلن اب ار اهاتیلباق فدح و

یارب PHP یاهتپیرکسا لماش، دوشلیم هتخانش هتسه مان اب هک، ل اپورد هیاپ دولناد. دراد #####

تیپیرکسا اواج یاهلیاف رایسب و اهابللق و اههنوزفا یخره هارمه هب، تسا CMS هیلوا یاهتیلباق یارجا

دولناد [Drupal.org](http://Drupal.org) تیاسبو قیرط زا دن اوتلیم یفاضای اهابللق و اههنوزفا زا رایسب. ریوصت و CSS و دنوش

دوش هدافتسا زین یرگیدی اهرتسب رد دن اوتلیم نینچمه ل اپورد

سکونیل یاجب، دشاب شاتنی کم ای زودنی و دن اوتلیم لماعلمتسیسی

یچاپ آ یاجب دشاب IIS ای Nginx دن اوتلیم رورسابو

دن نام نآ رب ینتبم یاهنیزگیاج ای MySQL یاجب دشاب SQLite ای PostgreSQL دن اوتلیم هدادلهگیاپ  
MariaDB ای Percona.

یاهتپیرکسا، هچرگا؛ دنوش هدافتسا دن اوتلیم زین هدادلهگیاپ و اهروورسابو، اهالماعلمتسیسی ریاس دن اوتلیم یقاب ریغت لبق ریغ هک دن تسه PHP نابز هب دنکلیم هدافتسا نآ زا رازفالمرن هک

## تسیچ ل اپورد زا هدفاتسا لالی

باختنا فل تخم ینابزیم یاهلسیورس و CMS یاهتسرب نیب زا دیناوتلیم، تیسبو کی تخاس ماگنه دناهدش رکذ لیل دنچ اجنیا. دیربب شیلیپ نآ زا هدفاتسا نودب ارتیس ای دیزاسب اردوخ CMS، دینک دنشاب رثوم تسانکم ل اپورد باختنا یارب هک

- راکنیا دیناوتلیم یتحارب و تسین یراوشد راک HTML اتسیا تاحفص اب کچوک تیس کی تخاس دننام ییاهتسرب هک دراد زاین یرتشیب هیلوانامز هب الومعم CMS اب تیس کی ییپرب. دیهدماچنار یاهالیاف اب راک یراوشد یگچراپکی، رتتمک یراک هبرجت اب ناگدنسیون یارب نیالاناشیاریو دوشیلم لماش ار هدادهاگیاپ رتهدیچیپ یاهتیلباق زا هدفاتسا ناکما و رتگرزب یاهتیسارد اتسیا
  - هک دنراد دوجو ینابزیم تامدخ و اهتسرب، هنومن یارب؛ دنتسه هروظنم صاخ CMS یاهرافالمرن یخرب فرط زا، لاپورد. دیزاسب ارتیوضع هاگشاب تیسبو ای گالبو کی دیناوتلیم اهنآ زا هدفاتسا اب زا دیهاوخب دیاش دیراد ار هروظنم صاخ تیس کی تخاس دصق رگا. تساهروظنم همه کی، رگی ددشاب هروظنم صاخ طیارش زا چراخ امش تیس رگا، لاجنیا اب؛ دینک هدفاتسا هروظنم صاخ CMS کی دینک هدفاتسا هروظنم همه CMS کی زا هک تسارت هب
  - دننام هروظنم همه کی زا هدفاتسا، هچرگا. دیآیم باسح هب یبلاج راک دوخ CMS رازفالمرن تخاس یاهباسح دننام CMS کی رد هیاپ یاهتیلباق هک ارچ، تسایبوخ باختنا زاغآ هطقنانونع هب لاپورد نایلاس هارمه هب، درادلابلند هب ار ناگدنهدلعسوت شالت زا تعاس نارازه اوتحم تیریدم و یربراک دناهدش تیوقت نآ تینما و فرطرب نآ یاهبئی، سربرب اهتیلباق نیا هک یزارد
  - ای دنتسه ناگیار هک مه یخرب. دنراد هارمه هب یتمیقانارگ زوجم CMS یاهرافالمرن یاهتسرب یخرب هدنکدودخم یاهزوجم هب انب ار هعسوت و رییغت هزاجا امش هب دوشیلم لماش ار ناگیار یاهخسن یرافالمرن زوجم هک دینک هدفاتسا لاپورد دننام یاهتسرب زا دیهاوخب دیاش. دندلیم دوخ رد رتشیب تاعالطایارب. دبای هعسوت یگرزب یربراک هعماج طسوت و دشاب هتشادن یاهدنکدودحم
- دینک هدهاشم ار [1.6, "#####: #####"](#) هطبار نیا

## طبترم تاعوضوم

- [1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [1.4, "#####: #####"](#)
- [1.6, "#####: #####"](#)

## یتاعالطامعبانم

- [#####](#)
- [Drupal.org ##### "FAQ" \(#####\)](#)
- [Drupal.org ##### "#####"](#)

- [##### "##### #####"](#)
- [##### "#####"](#)

ن‌اگدن‌ن‌کات‌کراشم

[erdfisch](#) رد [MichaelLenahan](#) هارمه هب [Pronovix](#) رد [Kristof van Tomme](#) طسوت هدش شیری و و هت‌شون [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) و

## 1.2. اهاهن‌وزفا: موهفم

### زاین‌شی‌پ‌شن‌اد

[##### 1.1, "#####: ##### # ##### # #####"](#)

### ت‌سی‌چ‌هن‌وزفا

رت‌شی‌ب‌ی‌اهلی‌لباق‌ندوزفا اب‌هک‌تسا CSS و JavaScript# PHP ی‌اهلی‌ف‌زا‌ی‌اه‌وم‌چ‌م‌هن‌وزفا‌کی  
ار‌ن‌آ### اب‌و‌لاع‌ف‌ار‌اهلی‌لباق‌نی‌ا‌دی‌ناوت‌لی‌م‌هن‌وزفا#### اب‌.دش‌خ‌ب‌لی‌م‌دوب‌هب‌ار‌تی‌اس‌در‌کل‌م‌ع  
کاپ‌ار‌هن‌وزفا‌طسوت‌هدش‌لام‌ع‌ی‌اهلی‌دن‌بر‌کی‌پ‌و‌هداد‌دشاب‌زاین‌دیش‌،ف‌ن‌ح‌زا‌لب‌ق‌؛دی‌ن‌ک‌لاع‌فری‌غ  
تسا‌رت‌هب‌س‌پ‌،دراذ‌گی‌م‌ری‌ث‌ات‌ام‌ش‌تی‌اس‌ی‌ل‌ک‌در‌کل‌م‌ع‌رب‌دوش‌لی‌م‌ب‌ص‌ن‌ه‌ک‌ی‌اه‌ن‌وزفا‌ره‌.دی‌ن‌ک  
دی‌ن‌ک‌ف‌ن‌ح‌ار‌هداف‌ت‌س‌ا‌ال‌ب‌ی‌اه‌ن‌وزفا

دن‌ک‌لی‌م‌مه‌ارف‌ار‌ری‌زی‌اه‌راک‌ی‌ارب‌زاین‌دروم‌ی‌اه‌ن‌وزفا‌لا‌پ‌ورد‌ه‌ت‌سه

- هن‌وزفا ☐ ی‌رب‌راک‌ی‌اه‌اب‌اس‌ح‌ت‌یری‌دم (User)
- ی‌اه‌ن‌وزفا‌ن‌ی‌ن‌چ‌مه Field UI# و Field ی‌اه‌ن‌وزفا‌ا‌هل‌ی‌ف‌و (Node) هن‌وزفا‌ا‌هل‌ی‌ف‌و‌ت‌ح‌م‌ت‌یری‌دم  
درا‌د‌دو‌ج‌و‌زین‌ا‌هل‌ی‌ف‌عو‌ن‌ی‌ارب‌.
- هن‌وزفا‌ا‌هل‌ی‌ف‌و‌ن‌م‌ت‌یری‌دم (Menu UI)
- ی‌اه‌ن‌وزفا‌ا‌هل‌ی‌ف‌و‌دو‌ج‌وم‌ی‌اه‌داد‌زا‌ا‌هل‌ک‌ال‌ب‌و‌ا‌هل‌ک‌ب‌ش‌،اه‌ت‌سر‌ه‌ف‌دا‌ج‌ی‌ا (Views UI و Views)

##### ای‌هدر‌ک‌دول‌ناد [Drupal.org](#) ##### زا‌ار‌#####  
##### دی‌ناوت‌لی‌م‌ن‌ی‌ن‌چ‌مه  
##### دی‌زاس‌ب‌ار‌دو‌خ

### ط‌ب‌تر‌م‌تا‌ع‌و‌ض‌وم

- [##### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)

- [#### 1.4, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 4.4, "Uninstalling Unused Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)
- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

## ی تاعلاطم عبانم

[##### ##### ## ##### ##### Drupal.org](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هت شون

## اهبلاق :م وهفم 1.3

### زای نشیپ شناد

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)

### تسیچ بلاق

و لاپورد هتسه .دن کلیم نییعت ار امش تیاس رهاظ و هولج هک تساهلایف زایاه و مچم بلاق کی هریخ ذی اهاداد ریاس و HTML نتم هلمچ زا ##### مادک دن کلیم نییعت امش تیاس رد لاعف یاهن و زفا شیامن امش تیاس تاحفص یور رگیدی اهلیایف ریاس و هدش رازگراپ ریواصت ، هداداگی اپ رد هدش .دوش هداقتسا اوتحم رهاظ یارب CSS شیامن هویش و HTML گت مادک زای دن کلیم صخشم بلاق .دوش هداد

طسوت ارثکا هک اهبلاق نی .تسا یلصا عیزوت هارمه هب هیاپ بلاق دنچ لماش لاپورد هتسه رهاظ یور رب راک عورش یارب یبسانم باختنا دن اهدش یزاس اهدایپ و یحارط زارد نایلاس یط یبراکاه و مچم .دیوش انشآ هنیمنی زای دن لاپورد میهافم اب دیناوتب ات دن تسه تیاس

هدرتسگ رایسب \_ یلوپ هچ ناگیار هچ \_ زین نآ یاهبلاق رازاب سپ تساهدش هتخانمش CMS کی لاپورد تساهدش .



کی. دی رادی شرافس بل ا ق کی داجی ا ه ب زای ن ،دن درکن ه دروآرب ار امش زای ن دوجوم ی ا ه ن ی زگ زا مادکچی ه رگا  
دش اب اوت حم شی امن هوی شی ری غت روظنم ه ب CSS لی اف کی شی اری وی گداس ه ب دن اوت لوم ی شرافس بل ا ق  
رد ۸ ل اپورد ی شرافس ی ا ه بل ا ق داجی ا اب طب ترم ی امن هار #####  
دراد رارق. [Drupal.org](http://Drupal.org).

## طب ترم تا عوضوم

- [#### 11.4, "Finding Themes"](#)
- [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

## یتاع لاطم عبانم

[##### Drupal.org](#).

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[John Grubb](#) و [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش شی اری و و هت شون

## اهاع یزوت :م وهفم 1.4

### زای ن شی پ شن اد

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### # # # # # # # # # #"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)

### تسی چ عی زوت

ی اهت سب تروص ه ب تی اس کی زا ی صاخ عون ی ارب ه دام آ شی پ زا ی ا ه ی ا ن اوت و اهت ی ل باق #####  
کی. دن تسه مادک ره صاخ ی دن برکی پ و رگی د ی ا ه بل ا ق و ا ه ن و زفا ه ارم ه ب ی لصا رازفا لرن زا ل ک شتم  
مامت ادتبا زا ه کنی ات دن کلی م ی ن ایش کم ک رتم ک ی ا ه ل اگ رد ه روظنم صاخ ی تی اس ی ی ارب ه ب عی زوت  
دوش ی ط ن ا ل ح ارم

دنراد دوج و اهاعی زوت زا یل صا عون ود

لامک و مامت ی اهاعی زوت

ی راجت، ی هاکش ناد طیحم دن نام دی آیم باسح هب صاخ یل کشم لح یارب هدام آ ی اهژورپ ی عی زوت نی نچ عی زوت کی زا دن اوتلم امش، هنومن یارب. لیبق نی زا و یعامتجا، یاهناسر، ی عافتناری ع، ی تلود عی زوت کی ناو نع هب ار دوخ یی اهن لح هار ای دینک هدافتسا یزرواشک هاکشورف تخاس یارب دوجوم دی رانگب نارگی د رای تخا رد

اهاعی زوت ریاس

رامش هب ناگدن دهاعسوت ای نازاسات یاس یارب یزاغ آ هطقن ناو نع هب دن اوتلم نی نچمه اهاعی زوت دین آ

## طبترم تا عوضوم

[#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

## یتاعل اطم عبانم

[##### ##### ## Drupal.org](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

طسوت هدش شیری و [Diana Lakatos](#) و [Antje Lorch](#) زا "##### و "##### — #####".

## 1.5. هداد عاون ا: موهفم

### دن تسه مادک ی اهداد عاون ا

شیری و هاکش ناد طیحم دن نام دی آیم باسح هب صاخ یل کشم لح یارب هدام آ ی اهژورپ ی عی زوت نی نچ عی زوت کی زا دن اوتلم امش، هنومن یارب. لیبق نی زا و یعامتجا، یاهناسر، ی عافتناری ع، ی تلود عی زوت کی ناو نع هب ار دوخ یی اهن لح هار ای دینک هدافتسا یزرواشک هاکشورف تخاس یارب دوجوم دی رانگب نارگی د رای تخا رد

اوتحم

عون نی. دنوش هداد شیری امن تیاس بطاخم هب دیاب هک لیبق نی زا و ریوصت، نتم تااعالطا دنوش شیری و دن اوتلم اما دن تسه رادی اپ الومعم تااعالطا

یدن برکی پ

هدافتسا تیاس راتخاس نی عت یارب و تسا رادی اپ اما، دشابن اوتحم هک امش تیاس هرابرد تااعالطا ینتم اهاتمسق الومعم اما، دوش هداد شیری امن بطاخم هب تسا نکمم زین اهاتقو یضعب. دوشلیم ی اهاتمسق فالخر لیبق نی زا و تیاس مان، اهدهلیف بسچرب دن نام دوشلیم لامش ار یکچوک دیسانشلیم اوتحم ناو نع هب هک رتگرزب

تلح

ارجا cron ی اهاتیل لاعف هک ینامز نیرخ آ دن نام، امش تیاس یل عف تلح تقوم تعی بط هرابرد تااعالطا دن اهدش

تسشن

نیای کوک تا عا ل ط ا ی تی اس ه ب ا ه ل آ دورو دن نام ، تی اس اب ن ا ر ب راک ی دار ف ن ا ل م ا ع ت ه ر ا ب ر د تا ع ا ل ط ا . تسای ت قوم ه ک ارچ ، تسای ص و ص خ ه ب ت ل ا ح کی

## طبترم تا ع و ض و م

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)
- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)
- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

ن ا گ د ن ک ا ت ک ر ا ش م

##### [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) ط س و ت ه د ش س ا ب ت ق ا  
#####

## ل اپورد ه ژورپ : موهفم 1.6

زای ن ش ی پ ش ن ا د

##### [1.1, "#####: ##### # ##### # #####"](#)

### تسیچ سروس نپوا و دازا رازفالمرن

ریغ زوجم کی تحت دازفا زای ا ه ع م ا ج ط س و ت ه ک تسای رازفالمرن (FOSS) سروس نپوا و دازا رازفالمرن ددرگلیم داجی دازا تروص ه ب دن زاسلیم ار ه م ا ر ب ه ک یی ا ه ل ی ا ف ##### دازا راشتنای اب و یراجت [1.7, "#####: #####"](#) ، ل اپورد رد ه د ش ه د ا ف ت س ا یراجت ریغ زوجم ه ر ا ب ر د ر ت ش ی ب تا ع ا ل ط ا ی ا ر ب دینک ه د ه ا ش م ا ر #####

### تسیچ ل اپورد ه ژورپ

ی ا ه ع و م ج م ه ا ر م ه ب ا و ت ح م تی ری د م ت س ی س ه ت س ه ه ع س و ت ن آ ف د ه ه ک تسای ه ژورپ کی ل اپورد ه ژورپ ر د ا ر د و خ هی ا م ر س و ن ا م ز ه ک ی دار ف ا . تسای ه ر و ط ن م ص ا خ ی ا ه ا ع ی ز و ت و ت ا د ن ت س م ، ا ه ا م ج ر ت ، ا ه ا ب ل ا ق ، ا ه ا ن و ز ف ا ز ا ی و پ ی ل و ه د ر ت س گ ی ا ه ع م ا ج ا ت ق ی ق ح ه ک د ن ی آ ی م م ه د ر گ ای ن د ف ل ت خ م ط ا ق ن ز ا د ن ه ل ی م ر ا ر ق ل ا پ و ر د ه ژورپ د ن ک ل ی م ر ا ک ک ر ت ش م ی ف د ه ی ا ر ب ه ک د ن ت س ه

دن نام دنه دلیم ماجنا ار ی صاخ هفیظو مادک ره هک تساهدش لی کشت یکچوک یاهورگ زا یربراکاهعماج، لاپورد رازفالمرن تینما تیعضو یسررب، تادنن تسم ن تشون، لاپورد رب ینت بم یرازفالمرن هعسوت هقطنم کی رد هک ییاهلیام هدرگ و هژیو یاهدربراک یارب لاپورد زا هدافتسا، صاخ ینابز هب نآ همچرت دنه دلیم ماجنا هنایلاس تروص هب ییایفارغج.

یربراکاهعماج اب طابترا یرارقرب هرابرد رتشیب تاعالطا یارب [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#) و [#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#) دینک هدهاشم ار.

## تسیچ لاپورد نمجنا

نآ یربراکاهعماج و لاپورد هژورپ زاینابی تشپ روظنم هب ی عافتنا ریغ نامزاس کی [#####](#) زادن ترابع نآ یل صافاده، بتسا:

- یناهج یاهدادرارق دافعنا
- [Drupal.org](#) یاهورس و اهت یاسبو زا یراده گن
- بو مرفت لپ ناونع هب لاپورد اقا ترا
- لاپورد یاهلش زومآ و تالی صحت زاینابی تشپ
- نآ فادهادربشیپ یارب یربراکاهعماج هب یلام یاهکمک ندرک مهارف
- فادهانیا روظنم هب یدقن یاهکمک یروآعماج

## طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 1.7, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)
- [#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

## یتاعلاطم عبانم

- [#####](#)
- [## ###](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هتشون

## ل اپورد زوجم: موهفم 1.7.

### زاینشی پ شناد

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)

### تسی چ ل اپورد زوجم

هب (GPL v2) ۲ هخسن ون گیمومع یناگمه زوجم تحت *Drupal.org* رد هدش ینابزیم یاهلایف مامت و ل اپورد GPL زوجم تحت ار *Drupal.org* یاههژورپ رد دوجوم لیاف ره دی تسه دازآ امش هک ینعم نی ا هب. دنراد رارق دع بیکرت اب ار ل اپورد هتسه دی ناوتلیم نی چمه. دینک رشن زاب و رییغت، هدافتسا، دولناد ۳ ای ۲ هخسن دینک ارجا دشاب زوجم نی ا لمش هک یدک ره.

دندنک یریگیپ ار دعاوق نی ا دیاب ل اپورد ناگدنکات کراشم:

- یاهلایف هلمچ زا، دنشاب دع ب هب GPL v2 زوجم تحت دیاب *Drupal.org* یاههژورپ رد دوجوم یاهلایف مامت لیلیبق نی ا زا و شلف، یریوصت، تپیرکس اواج PHP#
- هباشم زوجم تحت ار نی ا دیاب، دندنک تیاریلپک ار دوخ دک دنه اوخلم هک ل اپورد ناگدنکات کراشم مامت دنهد رارق ل اپورد اب تحت دیاب، دیراد ار اهن آعی زوت دصق رگا. دنوشلم قتشلم یل صا هژورپ زا ل اپورد یاهللاق و اهنوزفا دینک لمع دع ب هب GPL v2 زوجم
- زوجم تحت و دوشلم تیاریلپک دوخ ناگدنکات کراشم مان هب *Drupal.org* رد دوجوم یاونتحم مامت تسا 2.0 Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike license
- دنتسه دع ب هب GPL v2 زوجم تحت زین *Drupal.org* رد هنومن یاهدک

### طبترم تاعوضوم

[#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

### یتاعلاطم عبانم

- [#### "#####" ##Drupal.org](#)
- [#### "Drupal 8 LICENSE.txt" ## api.drupal.org](#)
- [#### ##### ##### ##](#)
- [#### ##### ##### ##](#)

- [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike license 2.0.](#)
- ["#####" ## groups.drupal.org](#)

ن اگدن نکات کراشم

["#####"](#) زا [Pronovix](#) رد [Diana Lakatos](#) طسوت هدش سابتقا



## طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)
- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#)

## یتاعلاطم عبانم

- ["##### ##### ## #####" ## ##### ##### ##### Drupal.org](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[erdfish](#) رد [Michael Lenahan](#) و [John MacDonald](#) طسوت هدشاشیاری و و هت شون

## تیساس حرط یزیراهم انرب 2.2

### فده

لیابوم و یزیموری اهلان ایاری اهرگورم یارب، تیساس کی حرط و شیمی پی یزیراهم انرب

### زاینشی پی شناد

- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## #####"](#)
- [#### i.6, "#####: #####"](#)

### اهم اگ

حرط، هچرگا؛ بی زادرب نآ حرط یزیراهم انرب هب، اوتحم دیلوت و تیساس تخاس زا لب ق هک تسای بوخ هدی اوتحم دنچ هکنی زا سپ ای دشاب هتشاد ددجم ی نیبزاب هب زاین ندش ییارجا زا لب ق تسای نکمم امش دراد یگتسب هژورپ رد عفنیذ دارفا شنکاو و هجدوب هب رمانی. دی هدرارق تیساس لخاد هونم

1. هاشورف ویرانس رد. دینک هی هت ار دوش هداد ناشن بطاخم هب دیاب هک تاعلاطا زا یتسرهف  
دوش لاماش ار یز دراوم دن اوتلیم تسرهف نی، یزرواشک



هچخیزات \* تسرا زاب هاگشورف هک ییاهت عاس و اهزور \* هشقن و یناشن هارمه هب هاگشورف لحم \* +  
زا وحتسج لباق تسرهف \* هدنشورف ره اب طبترم تایئزج \* ناگدنشورف تسرهف \* هاگشورف  
هاگشورف هب هدش هفاضه تالوصحم نیرخا تسرهف \* لوصحم ره تایئزج \* تالوصحم

1. دیریگب رارق دیاب تیس ایس یاهت مسق مادک رد ی تاعالطا هچ دیریگب میمصت

دنشاب تاحفص مامت رد دیاب هک ی تاعالطا  
هدش هفاضه تالوصحم نیرخا و یراک تعاس، یناشن

هدنشورف تایئزج تاحفص  
شدوخ هحفص رد هدنشورف ره هب طوبرم تاعالطا

لوصحم تایئزج تاحفص  
شدوخ هحفص رد لوصحم ره هب طوبرم تاعالطا

یلصا هحفص  
یراک تعاس و یناشن، هشقن، ناکم

هرابرد هحفص  
هاگشورف هچخیزات

ناگدنشورف تسرهف هحفص  
مادک ره هحفص هب دنویپ هارمه هب، ناگدنشورف زای تسرهف

تالوصحم تسرهف هحفص  
مادک ره هحفص هب دنویپ هارمه هب، تالوصحم زا وحتسج لباق تسرهف

2. تیس نیب طایم. تسرا رادروخرب یرتشیب تیمها زا تاعالطا مادک هحفص رد هک دیریگب میمصت  
شیامن یاوتحم نیلوا هب بلغا دن کلیم هدافتسا کچوک یاهرگروم ریاس ای لیابوم یاهلیشوگ زا هک  
دن زادریلیمن آهمادا یسررب هب الومعم و دنراد هجوت هحفص رد هتفای

3. یارب. دیریگب رارق تیس ایس یلصا شیامیپ راون رد دیاب تاحفص نی زا کی مادک دیریگب میمصت  
دشاب تالوصحم و ناگدنشورف، هرابرد، یلصا هحفص لماش تسرا نکمم شیامیپ راون، هنومن

4. گرزب و کچوک یاهرگروم رد ار نآ شیامن هوجن هک، دیریگب رظن رد هیلوا حرط کی هحفص ره یارب  
یاهرگروم زا تیس ناگدن کیدی دزاب رثکا هکنیا هب هجوت اب. دهلیم ناشن شیامن توافه هارمه هب  
ناوتب ات دینک یحارط کچوک یاهلوانا اب ادتبا هک تسرا یبوخ هدی، دن کلیم هدافتسا رتاکچوک  
زاین هکنان و دب تشاد نه اوخ یسرتسد دوخ زاین دروم یاوتحم هب دارفا رثکا درک لصاح نانی مطا  
دشاب هحفص ی دومع شیامیپ هب

ماچنا ار کچوک تاحال صای خرب دیراد زاین هک دیبایرد تسرا نکمم، تاحفص نی یراتخاس حرط داجی رد  
یراک تعاس، یناشن تسرا رتهب رتاکچوک یاهرگروم یارب دیریگب میمصت تسرا نکمم، هنومن یارب. دیهد  
دیریگب میمصت دیش، رگید فرط زا. دنوش هداد شیامن هحفص یرانک راون رد تالوصحم نیرخا تسرهف و  
دیهد شیامن هحفص ره یالاب رد یرتصتخم بلقا رد ار یراک تعاس و یناشن، رتاکچوک یاهرگروم یارب  
دبای شیامن هحفص ره یاهتنا رد هدش هفاضه تالوصحم نیرخا تسرهف اما

## دیهد شیازفا ار دوخ کرد

[#### 2.5, "##### #####"](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هتسرون

## ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌ی‌اه‌ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم و اهدلی‌ف :م‌وه‌ف‌م 2.3

### زای‌ن‌شی‌پ‌ش‌ن‌اد

- [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

### ت‌سی‌چ‌ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم

دک، ن‌تم‌زا دن‌اوت‌لی‌م‌ه‌ک‌ت‌س‌ا‌ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌هداد‌زا‌ی‌اه‌ن‌ی‌زگ (##### کی‌ای‌##### کی‌دوش‌هداد‌شی‌امن‌ت‌ی‌اس‌ن‌ا‌گ‌دن‌ن‌ک‌دی‌د‌زاب‌ه‌ب‌دی‌اب‌ه‌ک‌ی‌ی‌اه‌داد‌ری‌اس‌و‌ه‌می‌م‌ض‌ی‌اه‌لی‌اف‌،‌ری‌وص‌ت‌HTML# دی‌ل‌وت‌ر‌گی‌دی‌اه‌ن‌وز‌فا‌ای‌دوج‌وم‌راز‌فا‌لم‌رن‌زا‌هداف‌ت‌س‌ا‌اب‌دن‌اوت‌لی‌م‌ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌ی‌اه‌ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم‌.‌ددرگ‌لی‌گ‌شت‌دن‌وش‌.

فاده‌ا‌کی‌ره‌ه‌ک‌،‌دن‌وش‌لی‌م‌ی‌دن‌ب‌ام‌ی‌س‌ق‌ت‌##### مان‌اب‌ی‌ی‌اه‌هورگ‌رد‌ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌ی‌اه‌ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم‌ه‌ب‌دوخ‌ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم‌ع‌اون‌ا‌ر‌ث‌کا‌.‌دن‌ب‌ای‌لی‌م‌شی‌امن‌ت‌ی‌اس‌رد‌ی‌فل‌ت‌خ‌م‌ی‌اه‌و‌ی‌ش‌ه‌ب‌و‌ه‌ت‌ش‌اد‌ی‌فل‌ت‌خ‌م‌ی‌گ‌ن‌و‌گ‌چ‌و‌دن‌ت‌سه‌ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم‌ره‌ل‌خ‌اد‌ک‌چ‌وک‌ی‌اه‌ل‌ش‌خ‌ب‌ه‌ک‌دن‌وش‌لی‌م‌می‌س‌ق‌ت‌#####-#####:‌درداد‌دوج‌و‌ل‌واد‌تم‌ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم‌ع‌اون‌ا‌ی‌خ‌رب‌زا‌ی‌لودج‌ا‌ج‌نی‌ا‌رد‌.‌دن‌کلیم‌ل‌رت‌ن‌ک‌ار‌ن‌آ‌زا‌هداف‌ت‌س‌ا‌:

| ی‌ل‌ص‌ا‌ی‌اه‌درب‌راک                                                                                                                                               | ن‌ا‌ه‌ن‌وز‌فا | ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم‌ه‌خ‌اش‌لی‌ری‌ز | ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم‌ع‌ون     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| رد‌دی‌اب‌ه‌ک‌ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌ه‌ح‌ف‌ص‌ی‌ل‌ص‌ا‌ت‌م‌س‌ق‌دوش‌هداد‌شی‌امن                                                                                                    | Node          | اوت‌حم‌ع‌ون               | ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌ه‌ن‌ی‌زگ |
| ه‌ح‌ف‌ص‌اوت‌حم‌ع‌اون‌ا‌دی‌ه‌اوخ‌ب‌دی‌اش‌،‌ی‌زرواش‌ک‌ه‌ا‌گ‌ش‌ور‌ف‌ل‌ا‌ثم‌رد‌:‌ه‌ن‌وم‌ن‌.‌دی‌ش‌اب‌ه‌ت‌ش‌اد‌ار‌ت‌ال‌وص‌ح‌م‌ه‌ح‌ف‌ص‌و‌ن‌ا‌گ‌دن‌ش‌ور‌ف‌ه‌ح‌ف‌ص‌،‌هداس‌. |               |                           |                     |
| ی‌ور‌ه‌ا‌گ‌دی‌د‌چ‌رد‌ت‌ی‌ل‌ب‌اق‌ی‌ی‌اوت‌حم‌ی‌اه‌ت‌ی‌دوج‌وم                                                                                                         | Comment       | ه‌ا‌گ‌دی‌د‌ع‌ون           | ه‌ا‌گ‌دی‌د          |
| رد‌.‌دن‌ش‌اب‌ه‌ت‌ش‌اد‌ه‌ا‌گ‌دی‌د‌ش‌خ‌ب‌دن‌اوت‌لی‌م‌اه‌ت‌ش‌ون‌،‌گ‌ال‌ب‌و‌کی‌رد‌:‌ه‌ن‌وم‌ن‌.‌ت‌س‌ی‌ن‌ن‌آ‌ه‌ب‌ی‌زای‌ن‌ی‌زرواش‌ک‌ه‌ا‌گ‌ش‌ور‌ف‌ل‌ا‌ثم‌.                 |               |                           |                     |
| ی‌ازاد‌ی‌د‌رف‌اب‌ب‌تر‌م‌هداد‌دراو‌لی‌رب‌راک‌ب‌اس‌ح‌ت‌ی‌اس‌ی‌ور‌ه‌د‌ش‌.                                                                                             | User          | ی‌چی‌ه                    | ی‌رب‌راک‌لی‌اف‌ور‌پ |
| ی‌ارب‌.‌ت‌س‌ا‌لی‌می‌ا‌ی‌ن‌اش‌ن‌و‌ی‌رب‌راک‌مان‌ل‌م‌اش‌ل‌ق‌اد‌ح‌ت‌ی‌اس‌ره‌:‌ه‌ن‌وم‌ن‌.‌دش‌اب‌رت‌اه‌دی‌چی‌پ‌رای‌س‌ب‌دن‌اوت‌لی‌م‌ت‌م‌س‌ق‌ن‌ی‌ا‌ع‌ام‌ت‌ج‌ا‌ی‌اه‌ک‌ب‌ش‌. |               |                           |                     |
| ت‌روص‌ه‌ب‌ری‌وص‌ت‌و‌هداد‌رد‌ب‌ل‌غ‌ا‌ه‌ک‌ه‌ص‌ال‌خ‌،‌ی‌ی‌ال‌اب‌ی‌اه‌ت‌م‌س‌ق‌ره‌ی‌ی‌اه‌ت‌ن‌ا‌و‌ی‌ن‌ای‌م‌هداد‌شی‌امن‌ه‌ح‌ف‌ص‌دوش‌لی‌م‌.                                | Custom Block  | ک‌ال‌ب‌ع‌ون               | ی‌ش‌راف‌س‌ک‌ال‌ب    |

| ی ل ص ا ی ا ه د ر ب راک                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | ن آ ه ن و ز ف ا | ت ی د و ج و م ه خ ا ش | ت ی د و ج و م ع و ن         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| ن اک م و ی راک ت ع ا س د ی ه ا و خ ب د ی ا ش ، ی ز ر و ا ش ک ه ا گ ش و ر ف ل ا ث م ر د : ه ن و م ن . د ی ه د ر ا ر ق ی ا ه ن ا گ ا د ج ت م س ق ر د ا ر ه ا گ ش و ر ف .                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                 |                       |                             |
| ا و ت ح م ی د ن ب ا ه ق ب ط ی ا ر ب<br>د و ش ل ی م ه د ا ف ت س ا                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Taxonomy        | ن ا گ ژ ا و           | ی د ن ب ا ه ت س د ت ر ا ب ع |
| ا ب ا ر ت ا ل و ص ح م د ی ه ا و خ ب د ی ا ش ، ی ز ر و ا ش ک ه ا گ ش و ر ف ل ا ث م ر د : ه ن و م ن و ج ی و ه د ن ن ا م د ی ن ک ی د ن ب ا ه ت س د ا ه ن آ ه د ن ه د ل ی ک ش ت د ا و م ز ا ه د ا ف ت س ا گ ت ن ا گ ژ ا و ز ا ه د ا ف ت س ا ا ب د ن ا و ت ل ی م ه ت ش و ن ر ه ، گ ا ل ب و ل ا ث م ر د . ی گ ن ر ف ا ه ج و گ د ر ی گ ر ا ر ق ن و گ ا ن و گ ی ا ه ل ی د ن ب ا ه ت س د ر د . |                 |                       |                             |
| ل ی ا ف ای ر ی و ص ت ک ی<br>ک ی ه ب ه ک ه م ی م ض<br>ا و ت ح م ز ا ص خ ش م ع و ن<br>ت س ا ط ب ت ر م                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | File            | ی چ ی ه               | ل ی ا ف                     |
| و ن ا گ د ن ش و ر ف ی ا و ت ح م ع و ن و د ر ه ، ی ز ر و ا ش ک ه ا گ ش و ر ف ل ا ث م ر د : ه ن و م ن ط س و ت ه ن ح ص ت ش پ ر د ه ک د ن ت س ه ه م ی م ض ر ی و ص ت ل م ا ش ت ا ل و ص ح م د ن د ر گ ل ی م ت ی ر ی د م ل ی ا ف ت ی د و ج و م .                                                                                                                                             |                 |                       |                             |
| ق ی ر ط ز ا ه ک ی م ر ف<br>ن ا گ د ن ک د ی د ز ا ب ن آ<br>ن ا ر ی د م ا ب د ن ا و ت ل ی م<br>ر ا ر ق ر ب ط ا ب ت ر ا ت ی ا س<br>د ن ک                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Contact         | م ر ف ع و ن           | س ا م ت م ر ف               |
| ت س ا ز ا ی ن س ا م ت م ر ف ه ب ، ی ز ر و ا ش ک ه ا گ ش و ر ف ل ا ث م ر د : ه ن و م ن                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                 |                       |                             |

## ت س ی چ د ل ی ف

ن آ ز ا ی ص خ ش م ع و ن ل م ا ش ک ی ر ه ه ک د و ش ل ی م ه ر ی خ ز ی د ا ر ف ن ا ##### ر د ه د ا د ، ت ی د و ج و م ی ا ه ل ن ی ز گ ن و ر د د ن ا و ت ل ی م ا ه د ل ی ف ع ا و ن ا . ا ه ل ی ر ا ت ای ا ه ل ی ای ف ر ی ا س ای ر ی و ا ص ت ، ه د ش ی د ن ب ا ب ل ا ق ای ه د ا س ن ت م د ن ن ا م د ن ت س ه د ن . د ن و ش د ی ل و ت ر گ ی د ی ا ه ل ن و ز ف ا ای د و ج و م ر ا ز ف ا ل م ر ن ز ا ه د ا ف ت س ا ا ب .

ی ا ه ل ن ی ز گ م ا م ت ه ک ی ت ر و ص ه ب ، د ن و ش ه ف ا ض ا ت ی د و ج و م ی ا ه ل خ ا ش ر ی ز ی و ر ی د م ط س و ت د ن ا و ت ل ی م ا ه د ل ی ف ی ا و ت ح م ع و ن ، ه ن و م ن ی ا ر ب . د ن ش ا ب ا ه د ل ی ف ز ا ی ه ب ا ش م ع و م ج م ل م ا ش ن آ ه خ ا ش ر ی ز ک ی ز ا ت ی د و ج و م ت ا خ ی ص و ت و ت ی ا س ب و ی ن ا ش ن ، ر ی و ص ت ، م ا ن ی ا ر ب ی ا ه د ل ی ف ت س ا ن ک م م ی ز ر و ا ش ک ه ا گ ش و ر ف ل ا ث م ر د .

ی ا ه د ل ی ف ا ه ن ت ت س ا ن ک م م *Basic page* ی ا و ت ح م ع و ن ه ک ی ت ر و ص ر د د و ش ل م ا ش ا ر ه د ن ش و ر ف ه ب ط و ب ر م ، د ی ز ا د ر پ ل ی م ت ی د و ج و م ی ا ه ل ن ی ز گ ش ی ا ر ی و ای د ا ج ی ا ه ب ه ک ی ن ا م ز . د ش ا ب ه ت ش ا د ا ر ه ح ف ص ح ی ص و ت و ن ا و ن ع د ی ن ک ص خ ش م د ی ن ا و ت ل ی م ا ر ن آ ه ب ط و ب ر م د ل ی ف ر ه ز ا ی ن د ر و م ر ی د ا ق م .

## ط ب ت ر م ت ا ع و ض و م

- [#### 2.5, "#####"](#)
- [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)
- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)

- [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)
- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)
- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

ن اگدن نکات کراشم

by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) و [Grant Dunham](#). طسوت هدش شیروی و هت شون

## رال وژام ی اوتحم :م وهفم 2.4

زای نشیپ شناد

- [#### 2.3, "##### # #####"](#)
- [#### 2.2, "##### # #"](#)

تسیچ رال وژام ی اوتحم؟

اوتحم نیاندرک #####، دوشلیم هریخ هدا له اگیاپ کی رد امش تئاس ی اوتحم هکنیا هب هجوت اب لم اک هحفص کی ناو نع هب هکنیا یاجب، امش تئاس تاحفص یخرب ینعی، دوب ده اوخ یبولطم راک هاگشورف ویرانس رد، هنومن یارب. دن درگ دیلوت تئاس ی اوتحم ریاس زا راکدوخ تروص هب، دنوش شیرای و لوصحم رگا. دیریگب رظن رد یاهن اگادج یی اوتحم هنی زگ لوصحم ره یارب دیه اوخب تسا نکمم، یزرواشک وچتسج تیلباق و هیلوا داوم نیابی کرت اب دن اوتلیم تئاس هاگنآ دشاب هیلوا داوم دلیف کی لم اش هب دوخ زاین دروم هیلوا داوم یخرب ساسا رب دن اوتب ات دزاس مهارف یو یارب ارناکم نیابطاخم هب نداد. دزادرپب نآ لم اش تال ووصحم یوچتسج

تال ووصحم، هنومن یارب. دنوش هتخاس تاب ی کرت نیان زا دن اوتلیم زین تاحفص رتاکچوک یاهت مسق دنشاب نآ هدنشورف مان یزاس هریخ یارب دلیف لم اش دن اوتلیم [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#) ماجنا ناکما امش هب راکنیا. دراد رارق یرگید هحفص رد هدنشورف تایئزج هک [دینک هدهاشم](#) ار ده دلیم اریزی اهتیل اعف:

- هرامش و مان دن نام، دشاب نآ هدنشورف هب طوبرم تاعال طایارب یاهی حان دن اوتلیم، لوصحم ره هحفص رد نآ یراجت.
- دشاب دوجوم نآ تال ووصحم تسرهف یارب یتمسق دن اوتلیم، هدنشورف ره هحفص رد.

هدنشورف تاعال طاهک ینامز. دوش شیرای و هطقن کی رد اهنت تاعال طاه عطق ره هک تسا نیای لصال هدی کی هک ینامز؛ دنوشلیم زورب راکدوخ تروص هب زین نآ اب طبترم تال ووصحم مامت، دوش یناسر زورب

هنوزفا. دریگب رارق نآ هدرشورف هحفص رد راکدوخ تروص هب، دوش هدوزفا هدرشورف طسوت لوصحم و تاحفص داجی یارب رالوژام ی اوتحم زا هدافتسا درادناتسا هویش، دراد رارق لاپورد هتسه رد هک Views

دینک هدهاشم ار [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#) رتشیب تعالطا یارب؛ بتسا نوگانوگ یاهکالاب

تعالطا یارب؛ دنتسه یبسانم رازبا ##### اوتحم عون ره فل تخم شیامن یارب، نینچمه

دینک هدهاشم ار [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#) رتشیب

## طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 2.5, "#####"](#)
- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#)
- [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#)
- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)

ناگدننگات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هتسرون

## ی اوتحم راتخاس ی زی راهمان رب 2.5

### فده

هدافتسا تی دوجوم هحاش[] ری و عون هچ زا اوتحم ره یارب[] تیس ی اوتحم راتخاس یارب ی حرط داجی دنشاب تیس ی اوتحم زا ی تسرهف لماش تاحفص مادک هکنیا و[] دوش

### زاینشیپ شناد

- [#### 2.3, "#####"](#)
- [#### 2.4, "#####"](#)
- [#### i.6, "#####"](#)

## اہم اگ

1. رظن دروم ی اوتحم لم اش دن اوتلمی ہک ، دراد زاین یی اوتحم ہچ ہب امش تیس ایس ہکنی ا ہراب رد یرکفمہ حیضوت دن اوتلمی ہجیتن . دشاب نان ا ہب شیامن یارب امش رظن دروم ی اوتحم ای ناگدن کدی دزاب دشاب [#### i.6, "##### #####"](#) رد طوبرم
2. رتابسانم ن ا یارب یی اوتحم تی دوجوم عون مادک دیری گب میمصت ، ہدش یی اسانش ی اوتحم رہ یارب شیاری و دورلم راکب تیس ایس رد اوتحم نی ا ہنوگچ و اچک دیری گب رظن رد دیاب ، راکنی یارب . تسا ہاگشورف ناکم و یراک تعاس دی ہاوخب دی اش ، یزرواشک ہاگشورف ویرانس رد ، ہنومن یارب . دوشلمی ماجنا ار امش راک یشرافس کالب کی ، اوتحم نی ا یارب . دی ہدشیامن ہحفص رہ یرانکراون رد ار شیامن ار ہدنشورف رہ تائی زج ہک ی تاحفص دیری گب میمصت دی اش ، رگیدی لاثم ناو نع ہب . ہدلمی دننک شیاری و اردوخ تاعال طا دن اوتب ناگدنشورف ات دن درگ تیری دم ہنوزفا طسوت دن ہلمی . ہدلمی اری ناکم نین چ امش ہب ہنوزفا ی ہدزوج متسیس
- لی افورپ زا دی اوتلمی ، ہنومن یارب ، درادن دوجو تباث خساپ کی الومعم تامی مصت ہنوگنی یارب کی ہب اوتحم تروص نی ا رد اما ، دینک ہدافتسا ہدنشورف ہحفص یارب یی اوتحم ہنیزگ یاجب یربراگ دوب دہاوخن یی اس ا راک ناربراک ریس ہب ہدنی ا رد ن ا صاصتخا و دیری گلم قلعت صاخ ربراک
1. ن ا یارب یی اہلخاش ☐ ریز ہچ دیری گب میمصت ، دینکلم فی رعت ہک یی اوتحم تی دوجوم عون رہ نورد ہنیزگ تی دوجوم عون رد دی ہاوخب تسا نکم ، یزرواشک ہاگشورف لاثم رد ، ہنومن یارب . تسا بسانم تاحفص یارب اوتحم عون کی ، ہرابرد و لوا ہحفص ☐ ہداس تاحفص یارب اوتحم عون کی ، یی اوتحم دیری گب رظن رد تال و صحم تاحفص یارب اوتحم عون کی و ناگدنشورف
2. ہنومن یارب . دینک فی رعت ار زاین دروم ی اہدلیف ، دینکلم صخشم ہک تی دوجوم ہخاش ☐ ریز رہ یارب ن ا تاحیضوت و ریوصت ، تیسب و یناشن ، ہدنشورف مان یارب تسا نکم Vendor ی اوتحم عون دہاوخب ی اہن اگ ادج ی اہدلیف
3. یکچوک شخب ای لم اک تاحفص لم اش دن اوتلمی ہک ، دینک صخشم ار زاین دروم تی دوجوم ی اہل سرفہ ہاگنا . دیراد زاین ار ن ا زا یی اہل ہنیزگ ہچ دینک صخشم دیاب ، تسرفہ رہ یارب . دنشاب ہحفص کی زا ، ہنومن یارب . دنپای شیامن دیاب اہل ہنیزگ نی ا تلاح ہچ ہب و بیترت ہچ ہب دیری گب میمصت دب اب ہب تسرفہ کی ندرکاکچوک ، ہژاودی لک اب و جتسج ناکم تیس ایس ناگدن کدی دزاب ہب دی ہاوخب دی اش اہل ہنیزگ مادک دیری گب میمصت دیاب نینچمہ . دی ہدب ار ن ا یی اسابترم تیلباق ای صاخ ی اہل عومچم داوم ہارمہ ہب تال و صحم زا تسرفہ کی دنم زاین یزرواشک ہاگشورف اہل ہنومن یارب . دنپای شیامن دیاب رد ہی لوا داوم دلیف طسوت دیاب رم نی ا ہک دشابلمی و جتسج لباق تروص ہب اہل زاین دروم ہی لوا دوش ہتفرگ رظن رد تال و صحم ی اوتحم عون
4. دننام ☐ دراد زاین اری یی اوتحم عون ہچ دینک نییعت ، تی دوجوم ہخاش ☐ ریز رد ہدش صخشم دلیف رہ یارب کت اہدلیف رثکا . تسا نکم ن ا یارب یی زاجم رادقم ہچ و ☐ لیلی بق نی ا زا و ریوصت ، خیرات ، ہداس نتم دہدب ار دوخ ہی لوا داوم یارب رادقم دن چ دورو ہزاجا دیاب لوصحم کی ، ہنومن یارب اما دن تسہ رادقم
5. ن اش رادقم ہک یی اہدلیف : دینک صخشم اری دن بہا تسر د ی اہل تی دوجوم ہب عاجرا تہج بسانم ی اہدلیف دنشاب شیاری و لباق نامز لوط رد ہک یی زاجم ری داقم . دوش ہدی زگرب ی باختنا تسرفہ کی زا دیاب دشاب تال و صحم ی اوتحم عون رد ہی لوا داوم دلیف دن اوتلمی لاثم کی . دن تسہ ی بوخیادی دن اک
6. دنوش ہدافتسا یی اوتحم ی اہل تی دوجوم ریس ہب عاجرا یارب دن اوتلمی اہدلیف مادک دینک صخشم ی اوتحم عون رد دلیف کی ، دننکلم لوصحم تبت ہب مادقا ناگدنشورف ہک اچن ا زا ، ہنومن یارب دشابلمی زاین دروم ، تسا ہدرک تبت ار ن ا ہدنشورف مادک ہکنی ا ندرک صخشم یارب لوصحم

تسا ہدش ہدروآ یزرواشک ہاگشورف یارب یی اہل یی اوتحم راتخاس زا لاثم اچنی ا رد

| اهدلیف                                                                                               | اهلنومن                                                                | تئدوچوم هخاش یریز | تئدوچوم عون     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| هحفص نتم و ناووع                                                                                     | هحفص، یلصا هحفص<br>هرابرد                                              | هداس هحفص         | یئاوتم هنیزگ    |
| نتم، هدنشورف مان<br>یناشن، ریوصت، هحفص                                                               | ره یارب یاهحفص<br>هاگشورف رد هدنشورف                                   | هدنشورف           | یئاوتم هنیزگ    |
| نتم، لوصحم مان<br>عاجرا، ریوصت، هحفص<br>هک یاهدنشورف هب<br>هدرک تبث ار لوصحم<br>هیلوا داوم یدنباهتسد | ره یارب یاهحفص<br>هدش تبث لوصحم                                        | لوصحم             | یئاوتم هنیزگ    |
| هب دلیف نودب<br>یصوصخ                                                                                | رد تیاریپک راطخا<br>هارمه هب هحفص نییپ<br>یناشن و یراک تعاس<br>هاگشورف | یمومع             | یشرافس کالب     |
| هب دلیف نودب<br>یصوصخ                                                                                | داوم ریاس و هجوگ، جیوه<br>هیلوا                                        | هیلوا داوم        | یدنباهتسد ترابع |
| وعوضوم، لیمیا، مان<br>مایپ                                                                           | یمومع سامت مرف                                                         | یمومع             | سامت مرف        |
| هب دلیف نودب<br>یصوصخ                                                                                | هدادش یامن تئاس رد<br>دوشلیمن                                          | یچی               | یربراک لیافورپ  |

درد زاین اهلانآ هب تئاس هک ییاهتسر هف و

| شیامن لباق یاهدلیف                | یزاسابترم یرتلیف<br>یدنباهحفص                    | یریز و تئدوچوم عون<br>نآ هخاش | هیحان ای هحفص<br>هحفص     |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| و هدنشورف مان، ریوصت<br>نتم هصالخ | ن، اگدنشورف مامت<br>بیترت هب، ییابفلا<br>هحفص    | یئاوتم یاهلنیزگ<br>هدنشورف    | ناگدنشورف هحفص            |
| لوصحم مان، ریوصت                  | هیلوا داوم اب رتلیف<br>بیترت هب، ییابفلا<br>هحفص | یئاوتم یاهلنیزگ<br>لوصحم      | تالوصحم هحفص              |
| لوصحم مان، ریوصت                  | تبث لوصحم ۵ نیرخا<br>هدش                         | یئاوتم یاهلنیزگ<br>لوصحم      | تالوصحم یرانکراون<br>ریخا |

## دیهدشیازفا اردوخ کرد

- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#)

## هطوبرم می هافم

#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"

ناگدن نکات کراشم

شیرازی و، ینی بزب، داجی ا هب نآ زا تیعبت اب اهانامزاس هک دنیوگلی می دنی آرف هب یراتساری و راکشدرگ  
by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) و [Grant Dunham](#). طسوت هدش شیرازی و هتسرون

## یراتساری و راکشدرگ: موهفم 2.6

زای نشیپ شناد

#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"

### تسیچ یراتساری و راکشدرگ

شیرازی و، ینی بزب، داجی ا هب نآ زا تیعبت اب اهانامزاس هک دنیوگلی می دنی آرف هب یراتساری و راکشدرگ  
دندادرپلیم اوتحم راشتنا و

دنی آرف زا یشخب دندناوتلیم فلتخم یاهشقن اب رفن نیدنچ، نامزاس یاهدنی آرف و هزادنا هب هجوت اب  
ناراتساری و، دنیروآلیم ردشراگن هب و هدرک یروآلیم چ ارتاعالطا اوتحم ناگدن نکدی لوت، هنومن یارب. دنشاب  
بسانم نیبطاخم یارب هک دندادرپلیم اوتحم راشتنا هب نآ رییغت تساوخرده و ینی بزب، شیرازی و زا سپ  
دشاب.

هاگن دوخ رد اهان آتیعضو هک دنتسه راشتنا مدع ای راشتنا مچرپ کی لماش اوتحم عاونا، امش تیسرد  
دینک تبت نآ یارب دیناوتلیم اوتحم ره هریخذ ماگنه و درالیم

- دنتسه دهاشم لباقتیاسبو نیبطاخم مامت یارب هدش رشتنم یی اوتحم یاهانی زگ.
- تیوهزارحان اربراک طسوت اما، دنتسین دهاشم لباقتیاسبو نیبطاخم یارب هدش رشتنم یی اوتحم  
دنتسه یسرتسرد لباقتیاسبو دنشاب هتشاد ار مزال زوجم هک هدش

رد ریدم طسوت هک یتروص رد، دندکلیم ینابی تشپ هخسن یریگرد زا یی اوتحم تی دوجوم عاونا رثکا  
هب ینی بزب ره زا سپ رازفالمرن، دشاب لاعف تیلباق نی رگا. دشاب هدش لاعف تی دوجوم هخاش ریز  
هب راکنیا. دندکلیم داجی اری یاهتشدادی نآ تارییغت هرابرد و دندادرپلیم اوتحم یمیدق هخسن یزاسا هریخذ  
دهدلیم اری لبق هخسن کی هب تشگزاب و اوتحم هچخیرات رورم هزاجا امش

ناگدن نکدی لوت یارب یراتساری و راکشدرگ کی دیناوتلیم، اهلی ینی بزب و راشتنا مدع مچرپ زا هدافتسا اب  
هب بطاخم هب اوتحم شیانم نودب یلصا تیسرد هک یتروص هب دیروآ دوجوب ناراتساری و اوتحم  
رییغت داد ماجنا دیاب هک یراک اهنت، دشاب راشتنا هدام اوتحم هک ینامز. دندادرپلیم نآ یررب و شیرازی و  
تسنا راشتنا تیعضو

### طبترم تا عوضوم

- #### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"



- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

## یتاعلاطم عبانم

رد زین ار راشتنا زا سپ دنی آرف دنه اوخلیم بلغا اهانامزاس، مینکلیم تبحص نیالنی آوتحم زای تقو راکشدرگ هب اهانامزاس یخرب. دنزادرپب نیانی اسرزورب هب دشاب مزال دیاش اوتحم یاهامیت: دنی گب رظن، دریگلیم رارق راکشدرگ یچک رد اوتحم عون ره دشاب صخشیم هک ی تروص هب دنراد زاین یرتهادیچیپ، هنومن یارب ددرگلیم هدافتسا نیانی ارب راکشدرگ تیعضو هچ زا و تسیچ نیانی ربراک یاهزوجم و اهلقن، هدشدرشتنم و ینیبزاب دنمزاین، سیوناشیپ.

دینک هدافتسا [Workbench](#) یاهلنوزفا هعومجم زای دیناوتلیم امش، رتهادیچیپ یاهراکشدرگ یارب.

## ن اگدننکات کراشم

[Grant Dunham](#) و [Pronovix](#) رد [Diána Lakatos](#) طسوت هدش شیاری و هتشون.

## بصن 3. لصف

### رورس ی اهزای نشی پ: موهفم 3.1

#### تسی چ لاپورد ی ارجا ی اهزای نشی پ

##### کسیدی اضف

ی رگیدی اهلبلاق و اهلهنوزفا زا هک یتیسبو یارب. دراد زاین اضف یتیباهگم ۱۵ هب لقادح بصن کی یرانگراب یاهلیاف، هدادله اگیاپ یارب هک دیشاب هتشارد رظن رد. تسامزال اضف یتیباهگم ۶۰ دنک هداقتسا. دیراد زاین یرتشیب یاضف هب نابیتشپ یاهلیاف و ناربراک طسوت هدش.

##### رورس بو

Apache [هدشاهی صوت] یاهل ماع متسیسی یور هک ۲ هخسن یچاپ آیور لاپورد هتسه. تسا دوجوم رورس بو نیرتال وادتم یچاپ. دنکلم راک، دیشاب هتشارد رارق `mod_rewrite` هنوزفا اب هارمه زودنی و شاتنیکم، سکونیل [ونگ] لیاف زا هداقتسا یارب `AllowOverride All` ترابع لماش دیاب یچاپ رد `VirtualHost` یدنبرکیپ. دهدب ار لاپورد `.htaccess`.

Nginx لاپورد هتسه. تساهظفاح زاینیپ هداقتسا و درکلمع، الابی نامزله یور رب رورس بو نی زکرم ت هتشارد رارق زودنی و شاتنیکم، سکونیل [ونگ] یاهل ماع متسیسی یور هک ۱.۱ هخسن سکیانیچنایور. دیشاب هداقتسا لباق و لاعف دیاب زین `ngx_http_rewrite_module` هنوزفا. دنکلم راک، دیشاب.

Hiawatha متسیسی یور یمک راب و تساهداس نآ زا هداقتسا نینچمه. تساتینما یور رورس بو نی زکرم ت یلومعم نامز رد رورس بو نی هک دهلمی ناشن تساهدش ماجنا ناققحم طسوت هک یتاقیقحت. درانگیلم هنوزفا. دهلمی ناشن دوخ زاینرت هب درکلمع هلمح نامز رد یل و دراد اهرازفالمرن ریاس اب هباشم یرکلمع. دیشاب هداقتسا لباق و لاعف دیاب `URL Toolkit`.

Microsoft IIS لاپورد هتسه. تسایرایسب یاهلهنوزفا لماش هک تسا زودنی و لماع متسیسی صوصخم رورس بو نی. دنکلم راک، دیشاب هتشارد `PHP` زایبس انم یدنبرکیپ هک ینامز رورس بو نی ۷ و ۶ و ۵ یاههخسن هب هنوزفا زا ۷ هخسن رد ای ثلات [صخش رازبا کی زا دیناوتلم، تسا زاین زیمت یاهلی ناشن هب هک اجنآ زا دینک هداقتسا] `URL Rewrite`.

##### هداده اگیاپ

دینک هداقتسا ار ریزی یاهه دادله اگیاپ زایکی:

- MySQL - 5.5.3 (MariaDB 5.5.20, Percona 5.5.8) رتال اب ای
- InnoDB
- PostgreSQL - 9.1.2 رتال اب ای
- SQLite - 3.4.2 رتال اب ای



- **Drush** اهابلاق و اهلنوزفا، هی‌اپ رازفالمرن بصن نوچمه ی‌فی‌اظو ی‌ارب ار تاروت‌سد زا یدایز دادعت و اهل‌ژاورنگ ددجم می‌ظنت؛ وچ و سرپ و یری‌گلتش‌ونور هل‌مچ زا، ه‌داده‌اگی‌اپ تایلمع ی‌ارجا؛ بن‌کلیم مه‌ارف د‌ن‌راد ار دوخ هب طوبرم **Drush** تاروت‌سد زین اهابلاق و اهلنوزفا ی‌خرپ. تقووم هظفاح ی‌زاس‌کاپ
- **Drush** تسایرتاعی‌رس اهنت هن ی‌کی‌فارگ طبار اب هسی‌اقم رد. زا ه‌دافت‌سای‌ب ی‌تیری‌دم فی‌اظو م‌اج‌نا د‌ش‌ایلم رادروخرب زین یرتمک ی‌اطخ زا ه‌ک‌لب
- **Drush** ری‌اس اب ار ن‌آ دین‌اوتلی‌م رت‌ه‌دی‌چی‌پ فی‌اظو م‌اج‌نا ی‌ارب، تسایلم‌رف طخ طبار کی. ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ زا دین‌ک بی‌کرت رورس تاروت‌سد
- **Drush** سرپ ی‌ارجا، هن‌ومن ی‌ارب؛ د‌ن‌رادن رارق ل‌اپ‌ورد ی‌کی‌فارگ طبار رد ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ تسایرتشی‌ب تان‌اکم‌ال‌ماش ه‌داده‌اگی‌اپ ی‌اه‌وچ و

ن‌ام‌رف طخ ی‌سرت‌سد تسایلم‌رف ن‌آ ی‌ورل‌اپ‌ورد ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ ی‌رورس ه‌ب دی‌اب، دی‌راد ار **Drush** زا ه‌دافت‌سایلم‌رف رگا ی‌اه‌ل‌م‌عل‌اروت‌سد ی‌ارب. دین‌ک ه‌دافت‌سایلم‌رف ی‌ور **Drush** راگ‌زاس ه‌خ‌سن زا ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ زاین و دی‌شاب ه‌ت‌ش‌اد تاروت‌سد هب طوبرم تاد‌ن‌ت‌سم نین‌چمه. دین‌ک ه‌ع‌ج‌ارم **##### Drush** ه‌ب ه‌خ‌سن ی‌راگ‌زاس و بصن دراد دوجو تی‌اس ن‌آ رد **Drush**

## دوشایم ه‌دافت‌سایلم‌رف؟ Composer

ندرک صخ‌شم اب ه‌دن‌ه‌ده‌ع‌س‌وت ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ ی‌ت‌روص ه‌ب **PHP#** ی‌اه‌لی‌گ‌ت‌س‌ب‌او تیری‌دم ی‌ارب تسایلم‌رف **Composer** ن‌آ بصن و دول‌ناد دین‌آ‌رف تیری‌دم ه‌ب رازفالمرن ن‌آ، دراد ار ن‌آ زا ه‌دافت‌سایلم‌رف د‌صق ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ ی‌اه‌ن‌اخب‌ات‌ک ه‌خ‌سن د‌زاد‌رپ‌ایم.

ی‌اه‌ن‌اخب‌ات‌ک ی‌رای‌س‌ب زا ه‌دافت‌سایلم‌رف ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ، تسایلم‌رف **Composer** ی‌اه‌رب‌راک زا ی‌کی‌دوخ ل‌اپ‌ورد ه‌ت‌سه ار ل‌اپ‌ورد ه‌ت‌سه ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ ی‌ن‌امز. دراد زاین رازبا ن‌آ ه‌ب، د‌ن‌ت‌سه‌ب‌چ‌او رازفالمرن حی‌حص ی‌ارجا ی‌ارب ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ، ی‌ج‌راخ دین‌ک دول‌ناد ار د‌ش‌اب ه‌ن‌اخب‌ات‌ک زا راگ‌زاس ه‌خ‌سن ل‌ماش ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ ی‌اگی‌اب لی‌اف کی دی‌اب ای، دین‌کلیم بصن دیری‌پ تروص ی‌ج‌راخ ی‌اه‌ن‌اخب‌ات‌ک دول‌ناد راک ات ه‌درک ارجا ار **Composer** ای

هن‌وزفا کی، هن‌ومن ی‌ارب؛ د‌ن‌کلیم ه‌دافت‌سایلم‌رف ی‌ج‌راخ ی‌اه‌ن‌اخب‌ات‌ک زا زین ی‌رب‌راک‌ه‌ع‌ماچ ی‌اه‌ن‌وزفا ی‌خرپ ی‌ای‌فارغ‌ج هن‌وزفا کی و د‌ش‌اب ه‌ت‌ش‌اد زاین دوخ صاخ ه‌ن‌اخب‌ات‌ک ه‌ب تسایلم‌رف کم‌م کو‌ب‌سی‌ف تی‌ع‌ماچ ه‌ارمه ه‌ب هن‌وزفا کی بصن ی‌ارب. د‌ش‌اب د‌ن‌مزاین ی‌ای‌فارغ‌ج ه‌ق‌طن‌م صی‌خ‌شت تان‌اکم‌ال‌ماش ه‌ب تسایلم‌رف کم‌م دی‌راد **Composer** ی‌ارجا ه‌ب زاین، ی‌ج‌راخ ی‌اه‌ن‌اخب‌ات‌ک

## تسایلم‌رف دوجوم بلاق و هن‌وزفا ناگ‌دن‌ه‌ده‌ع‌س‌وت ی‌ارب ی‌ی‌اه‌رازبا ه‌چ

د‌ن‌ت‌سه دوجوم بلاق و هن‌وزفا ناگ‌دن‌ه‌ده‌ع‌س‌وت ی‌ارب و رشی‌پ رازبا، ال‌اب ه‌دش ه‌راشا رازبا رب ه‌وال‌ع

### Drupal Console

د‌زاد‌رپ‌ایم تی‌اس اب ل‌ماع‌ت و هی‌ل‌وا ی‌اهدک دی‌ل‌وت ه‌ب ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ تسایلم‌رف طخ رازبا کی **Drupal Console** زا ی‌ش‌خ‌ب ی‌شی‌ام‌زآ ی‌اوت‌حم د‌اج‌ی‌ا و اهابلاق و اهلنوزفا بصن، م‌رف ای ک‌ال‌ب د‌ک دی‌ل‌وت، هن‌ومن ی‌ارب دیری‌گلیم ه‌ره‌ب **Symfony** ل‌وس‌ن‌ک زا رازبا ن‌آ. تسایلم‌رف د‌رک‌ل‌م‌ع

### Coder

ل‌اپ‌ورد ی‌اهد‌راد‌ن‌ات‌سایلم‌رف بلاق ای هن‌وزفا ای د‌ن‌کلیم ی‌سررب ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ تسایلم‌رف طخ رازبا کی **Coder** دین‌ک ی‌سی‌ون‌ه‌م‌ان‌رب ی‌اه‌اطخ حال‌صا ه‌ب م‌اد‌ق د‌ن‌اوت‌لی‌م نین‌چمه. ری‌خ ای د‌ن‌کلیم تی‌ع‌ب‌ت

رگ‌رورم رد ی‌ب‌ای‌پ‌ی‌ع رازبا

ی‌ی‌اد‌زال‌اک‌شا، ه‌ده‌اشم ه‌زاجا امش ه‌ب ه‌ک‌اچ‌ن‌آ تسایلم‌رف ی‌رازبا ل‌ماش مورک و س‌ک‌اف‌ری‌اف هل‌م‌چ زا بو ی‌اه‌رگ‌رورم ه‌ح‌ف‌ص زای‌ت‌م‌س‌ق ی‌ور‌ندرک تسایلم‌رف کی‌ل‌ک اب. د‌ن‌ه‌لی‌م ار **HTML** و **CSS** و **JavaScript** ی‌اه‌لی‌اف ی‌سررب و

#####  
دینک لاعف ار رازبا نی ا دیناوتلم "Inspect element" ای "Inspect" باختنا و  
دهلم شیامن رازبا نی ا هرنپ رد ار لاپورد اب طبترم یفاضا تاعالطا #####

## طبترم تا عوضوم

#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"

## یتاعلاطم عبانم

- ["#####"](#) *Drupal.org* یربراکاهعماج تادن تسم هحفص رد
- ["##### ## Composer ##"](#) *Drupal.org* یربراکاهعماج تادن تسم هحفص رد

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) و [Boris Doesborg](#) طسوت هدش شاری و هتشون

## بصن یارب یزاس اهدام 3.3

### فده

زاین دروم یاهزاینشیپ مامت تیری دم و لاپورد بصن یارب بسانم یهار باختنا

### زاینشیپ شناد

- [#### 3.1, "#####"](#)
- [#### 3.2, "#####"](#)

## تیس یاهزاینشیپ

دینک بصن ار رازبا نی ا ادتبا ،دیراد ار لاپورد بصن دصق Drush اب رگا  
#####  
دینک دهاشم ار #####

## اهامگ

1. لاپورد بصن یارب شور کی باختنا

ناگیار و نیال نیومد کی ندرک ناحتم  
رادی اپ بصن کی هب هقی قد ۲۰ زا رتمک ات دینک هدفاسا لاپورد تامدخ نیال نیال هدن هد هئارا کی زا  
دینک هدهاشم ار [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org) `#### "#####" ##` دی بای تسد لاپورد زا

ینابزیم سیورس رد دوجوم هدننکابصن کی زا هدفاسا  
طوبرم تادن تسیم هک تسای نکمم، دیراد ار دوخ ینابزیم سیورس قی رط زا لاپورد بصن دصق رگا  
`##### ## #####` دینک ادیپ سیورس نآ رد ار نآ هب  
دینک هدهاشم ار [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org) `##`

Drush زا هدفاسا  
دیراد زاین تیاس رد Drush بصن و نامرف طخی سرتسد هب راکنیایارب  
دینک هدهاشم ار [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org) `3.2, "#####: ####"`

بو تحت هدننکابصن زا هدفاسا  
زاین ینابزیم رورس بو ای یلحم متسیسی یور زاین دروم یاضف هب لاپورد ی تسد بصن یارب  
دیراد

هدام طیحم کی زا هدفاسا  
هدفاسا دراد دوخ رد ار نآ زاین دروم یاهرازف المرن مامت و لاپورد هک یزاجم نی شام ای هدام طیحم کی زا  
`#####` ناونع اب دوخ لماع متسیسی هب طوبرم تمسق هب، یلامتحا یاهلنی زگیارب. دینک  
دینک هدهاشم ار [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org) `### ####`

2. رد دوخ تیاس یارب یناشن کی، دیراد ار بو تحت هدننکابصن ای `Drush` زا هدفاسا دصق رگا  
امش رظن دروم ناکم هک دینک لصاح نانیمطا. دینک صخشم ینابزیم سیورس ای یلحم متسیسی  
دشاب هدش یدنبرکیپ ی تسرد هب لاپورد تیاس ینابزیم یارب
3. باسح کی هارمه هب هدادلهگیاپ کی، دیراد ار بو تحت هدننکابصن ای `Drush` زا هدفاسا دصق رگا  
دینک داجی الماک یاهلی سرتسد اب هئارا گادج یربراک
4. هک ی تروص هب هدرک دراو نامرف طخی رد ار ورشیپ تاروتسد، دیراد ار `Drush` زا هدفاسا دصق رگا  
`DB_PASS` و `DB_USER` و `DB_NAME` و دریگلیم رارق نآ رد لاپورد هک تسای روتکریاد مان `example`  
دن تسه هدادلهگیاپ هب ی سرتسد یارب زاین دروم یاهرت مآراب

```
drush dl drupal --drupal-project-rename=example
cd example
drush site-install standard --db-url='mysql://DB_USER:DB_PASS@localhost/DB_NAME'
```

5. دولپآ ی تسد تروص هب ار لاپورد یاهلیاف، دیراد ار بو تحت هدننکابصن زا هدفاسا دصق رگا  
دینک هدهاشم ار [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org) `11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"` هب Composer ای Git زا هدفاسا اب راکنیایارب. دینک  
هدرشف لیاف دولناد یارب سپس؛ دینک هدهاشم ار `Download Files`

a. دینک کیلک `Download & Extend` یور و هتفر <https://www.drupal.org> ریسیم هب

# Download & Extend

## Download

[Download Drupal 8.1.10](#)
[Try a hosted Drupal demo](#)

See [Drupal's project page](#) for more information, older versions, and project development. Explore [hosting options](#) for your site. Browse [documentation](#) for more help and information.

- b. دولناد هحفص هب ات [] بسانم هخسن هب هجوت اب [] هدرک کیلک *Download Drupal* همکد یور دیورب.

### Downloads

#### Recommended releases

These are stable, well-tested versions that are actively supported.

#### Drupal core 8.1.4

Released: Jul 06 2016

The next patch release of Drupal 8 is ready for new development and use on production sites.

#### Drupal core 7.44

Released: Jun 15 2016

If you need stability and features from the widest variety of contributed modules and themes, this is the version for you.

- c. کیلک نآ یور و هدرک باختنا *Recommended releases* زا دیراد ار نآ دولناد دصق هک یاهخسن دینک.

### Releases

## drupal 8.1.3

Download  
drupal-8.1.3.tar.gz  
tar.gz

11.97 MB

Download  
drupal-8.1.3.zip  
zip

19.55 MB

- d. دینک دولناد دوخ ه نایاری و ار zip ای tar.gz هخسن
- e. و هدش لنپ لرتنک دراو. دینک دولپآ ینابزیم سیورس یربراک باسح هب ار هدش دولناد لیاف
- f. دینک دولپآ اچنی اردارالیاف. دیورب HTML یروتکریاد هب
- g. دوشایم دیدج یروتکریاد کی داجی ا هب رجنم هک دیزاس چراخ هدرشف تلواح زا ار zip ای tar.gz لیاف
- h. دوشاب هتفرنیب زایل بق دنی آرف یط رگم، دینک فنح رورس زا ار هدرشف لیاف
- i. یارب امش ینابزیم سیورس یدنبرکی پاب هک یتروص هب دینک ددجم یراذگمان ار یروتکریاد
- j. دوشاب بسانتم تیاسبو ییاسانش

```
tar -xzf drupal-8.3.2.tar.gz
```

## دیهد شرتسگ اردوخ کرد

دینک دهاشم ار [#### 3.4, "##### ##### ###"](#)، دیراد ار راک ماجنا دصق بو تحت هدننکابصن زا هدافتسرا اب رگا

## یتاعلاطم عبانم

### [Drush](#)

نآگدننکاتکراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) هارمه هب [erdfisch](#) رد [Michael Lenahan](#) و [Drew Gorton](#) طسوت هدش شیاری و هتشون

و [Red Crackle](#) رد [Joey Alphonso](#).

## بصن دنی آرف یارجا 3.4.

### فده

هدننکابصن یارجا اب ریدم باسح داجی و لاپورد بصن

### زاینشی پشناد

[#### 3.1, "#####: ##### #####"](#)



## تیس ای اہزای نشیپ

#### 3.3, "##### ####"####

### اہم اگ

1. ن کمم، دین کلیم هدافتسا ومد تیس ای ین ابزی م سی ورس رد کیلک کی اب بصن دنی آرف کی زا رگا ی تسد تروص هب ار لاپورد ی اہل ای اف رگا. دینک ہدہاشم ار ورشیپ ی اہدن ی آرف زا ی شخب ای مامت تسا دی و رب دوخ تیس بو یناشن هب و ہدرک زاب رگورم کی، ہدننک ابصن زاغ ای ارب، دی شاب ہدرک دولپآ
2. زا دیناوتلیم نی چمہ ی سراف، ہنومن ی ارب؛ دینک باختنا ہدننک ابصن ہحفص نی لوا رد ار نابز کی تروص هب ی باختنا نابز ی ارب زاین دروم ی اہل ای اف. دینک باختنا تسرهف رد دوجوم ی اہل نابز ریاس *Save* یور، نابز باختنا زا سپ. دوش ماچنا نابز نآ هب بصن دنی آرف ہمادا ات دنوشلیم دولناد راکدوخ دینک کیلک *and continue*.

3. ی صخشم ی اہتلی باق و اہلی گژی و لماش بصن ی اہل ای افورپ. دینک باختنا ار بصن لی افورپ کی ہارمہ هب لاپورد ہتسہ زا ہناگادج دولناد کی تروص هب ہک دنتسہ تیس ن وگانوگ عاونا ی ارب لی افورپ. تسا بصن لی افورپ ود لماش لاپورد. دنوشلیم ہئارا نآ زاین دروم ی اہل باق و اہلنوزفا دینک کیلک *Save and continue* یور و ہدرک باختنا ار درادناتسا بصن

4. دشاب هتشاد دوجو یلکشتم رگا. تساورس زاین دروم طیارش یسررب بصن دنیآرف رد یدعب ماگ تروص هب هدنکابصن، تروصنی ریغ رد. ددرگلم نایامن نآ لح یارب صاخ تاروتسد اب یاهحفص دورلیم یدعب ماگ هب راکدوخ.
5. ار دیرک داجی [3.3, "##### #####"####](#) لصف رد هک هدادلهآگیاپ زاین دروم تائیئج دینک کیلک *Save and continue* یورس پس هئارا.

| رادم             | تاحیضوت                            | دلیف مان               |
|------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| drupal8          | هب هدش هداد یشرافس مان هدادلهآگیاپ | هدادهآگیاپ مان         |
| databaseUsername | هدش داجی ایربراکامان               | هدادهآگیاپ ایربراکامان |
|                  | هدش باختنا هژاورگ                  | هدادهآگیاپ هژاورگ      |

6. اربصن دنی آرف یورشی پ نازی م هک تس ا *Installing Drupal* ن اون ع اب ی شی امی پ را ون ل ماش دعب ماگ دورلم دعب هح ف ص هب راکدوخ تروص هب ،بصن ن ای اپ زا سپ .دهلم ن اشن

7. رد هدش داج ی ای رب راک باسح هکن ی اهتکن .تس ات ی اس هراب رد هی اپ تا ع ال ط ای خ رب ی دن برکی پ رخ آم ماگ باسح ن ی ا هراب رد مه م تا ع ال ط ای ا رب .دراد ار م زال ی اهلی سرتسد مامت هک تس ا ری دم باسح ن امه هل ح ر م ن ی ا

"admin" مان زا دیناوتلی م. دینک هدهاشم ار [7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account" #####](#)، یربراک دشاب درفبرصحنم و نمان آهب طوبرم هژاورنگ هک دیبای نانیمطا و دینک هدافتسان آیارب

+ دینک رپ ورشیپ تاعالطاب ار مرف

+

| رادیق م                                                  | تاحیضوت                         | دلیف مان       |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------|
| Anytown Farmers Market                                   | تیس یارب هدش باختنمان           | تیس مان        |
| <a href="mailto:info@example.com">info@example.com</a>   | هب هدش هداد صاصتخالی میا<br>تیس | تیس لیمیایناشن |
| admin                                                    | ریدم یربراک باسح                | یربراک مان     |
|                                                          | ریدم یارب یباختن هژاورنگ        | هژاورنگ        |
|                                                          | یباختن هژاورنگ رارکت            | هژاورنگ دییات  |
| <a href="mailto:admin@example.com">admin@example.com</a> | ریدم صوصخم لیمیای               | لیمیایناشن     |

+ دیرانگب دوخ ضرفشیپ تلاح هبار هدنامیقابی اهدلیف دیناوتلی م

+

# Drupal 8.0.1

[Choose language](#)[Choose profile](#)[Verify requirements](#)[Set up database](#)[Install site](#)[Configure site](#)

## Configure site

### SITE INFORMATION

**Site name \*****Site email address \***

Automated emails, such as registration information, will be sent from this address. Use an address ending in your site's domain to help prevent these emails from being flagged as spam.

### SITE MAINTENANCE ACCOUNT

**Username \***

Several special characters are allowed, including space, period (.), hyphen (-), apostrophe ('), underscore (\_), and the @ sign.

**Password \***

Password strength: Strong

**Confirm password \***

Passwords match: **yes**

To make your password stronger:

- Add uppercase letters

**Email address \***

### REGIONAL SETTINGS

**Default country**

Select the default country for the site.

**Default time zone**

By default, dates in this site will be displayed in the chosen time zone.

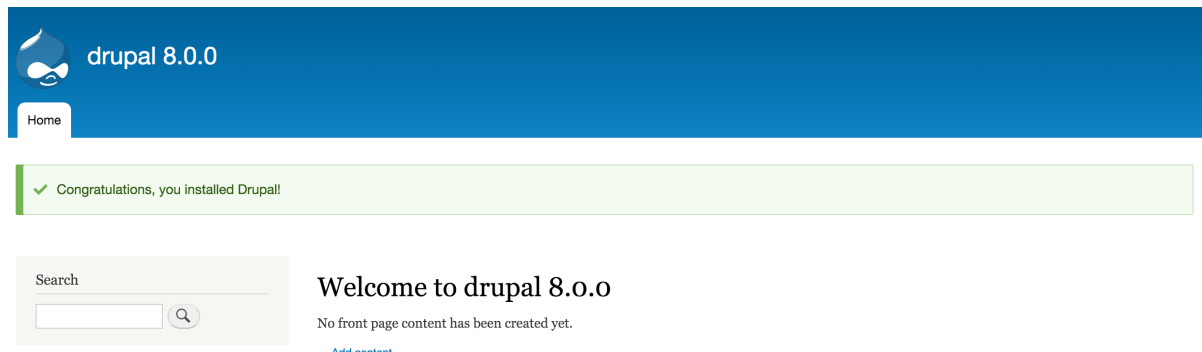
### UPDATE NOTIFICATIONS

**Update notifications**

- ☒ Check for updates automatically
- ☒ Receive email notifications

The system will notify you when updates and important security releases are available for installed components. Anonymous information about your site is sent to [Drupal.org](https://drupal.org).

1. دینک کیلک *Save and continue* یور.
2. #####! ##### ##  
مایپ لماش هک دوشلوم تیاده دوختیاس تسخن حفص هب هلحرم نیارد  
تساه حفص یالاب رد #####



## دیهد شرتسگ اردوخ کرد

دینک یسررب یلامتحال اکشراهنوگره یسررب یارب ارتیعضو شرازگ حفص  
دینک دهاشم ار [12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)

## طبترم تاعوضوم

- [11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)
- [3.2, "#####"](#)

## یتاعلاطم عبانم

Drupal.org یربراکاهعماج تادنتسم حفص رد ["#####"](#)

ناگدننکاتکراشم

[Red Crackle](#) رد [Joey Alphonso](#) و [Drupalize.Me](#) رد [Joe Shindelar](#) طسوت هدش شیاری و هتشون

---

# تیس ہای پ یدن برکی پ 4. ل صرف

## 4.1. Concept: Administrative Overview

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

### What is the administrative menu?

The toolbar provided by the core Toolbar module displays the *Manage* administrative menu at the top or left side of the site, for users with permission to see it. This menu provides access to all of the administrative areas of the site. The menu entries will vary depending on which modules are active on your site and the permissions of the person viewing the menu; if you install using the core Standard installation profile and have full administrative permissions, the top-level entries are as follows:



#### Content

Lists and manages existing content, and allows creation of new content.

#### Structure

Contains a list of links for managing structural elements of the site, such as blocks, content types, menus, and taxonomy.

#### Appearance

Manages themes and appearance-related settings.

#### Extend

Manages the installation and uninstallation of modules.

#### Configuration

Contains links to settings pages for various site features.

#### People

Manages users, roles, and permissions.

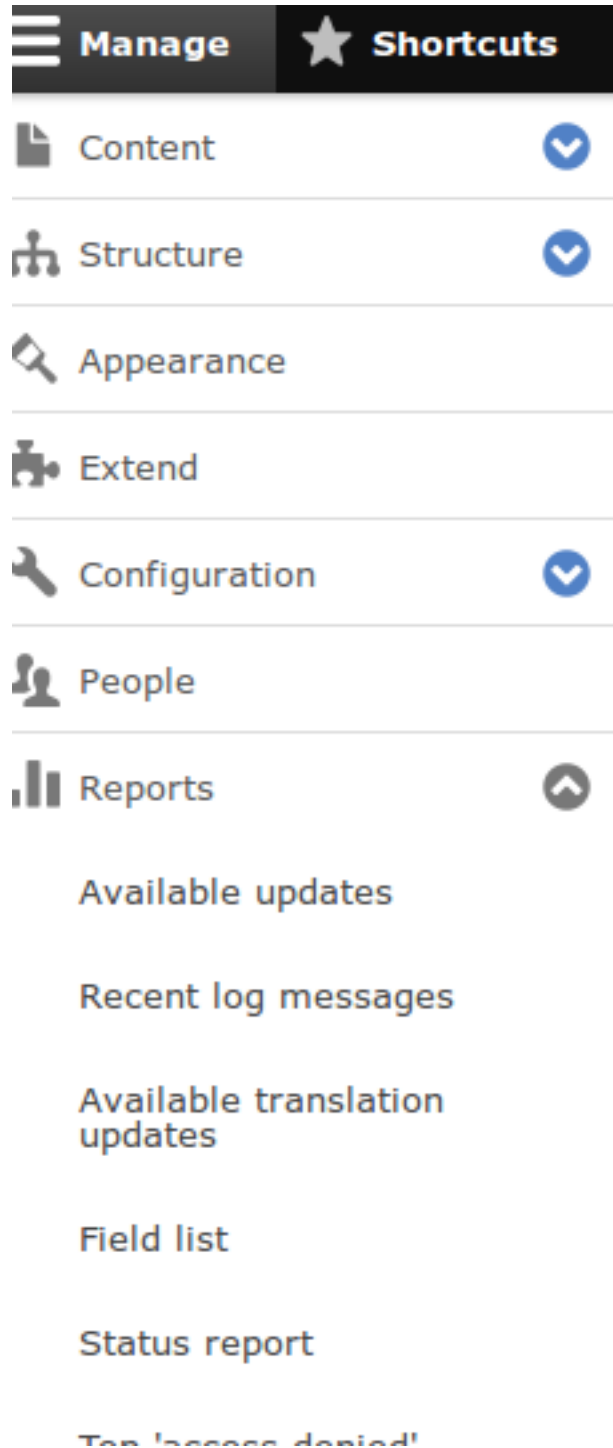
#### Reports

Contains links to logs, update information, search information, and other information about the site's status.

#### Help

Lists help topics for installed modules that provide them.

The arrow button on the far right side of the second line of the toolbar (or far left side, if the site is being viewed using a right-to-left-reading language like Arabic) can be used to switch the menu from appearing horizontally at the top of the page, to a vertical format on the left side (or right side, in right-to-left languages). When viewed vertically, the menu becomes an interactive tree.





This guide has a standard way to describe navigation to administrative pages using the administrative toolbar. See [##### i.5, "#####"](#) for more information.

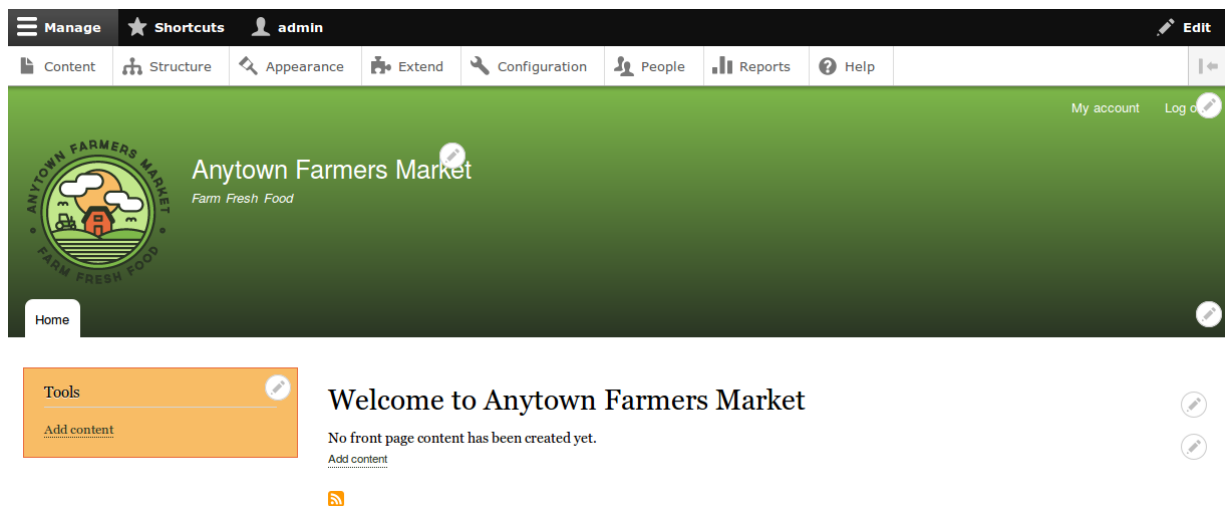
## What are contextual links?

Some administrative and editing functionality on the site can be accessed through the *contextual links* displayed by the core Contextual Links module. Contextual links take you to

some of the same pages that you can access through the administrative menu, but instead of having to navigate through the menu hierarchy, these links are provided near where the related content is displayed on your site.

Contextual links have to be activated to be visible. If your site's theme uses the default styling for contextual links, a pencil icon is used to indicate that contextual links are present and activated, and if you click the icon, you will see the contextual links. There are two ways to activate the pencil icons that provide access to the contextual links:

- If you are using a mouse in a browser, the icon will temporarily appear when you hover over an area that has related contextual links.
- You can click the master pencil icon (or its *Edit* link) at the right end of the top bar in the toolbar, which will activate all of the contextual links on the current page. This icon is only visible on pages with contextual links.



## Attributions

Written by [Scott Wilkinson](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 4.2. Editing Basic Site Information

### Goal

Change basic site information such as *Site name*, *Slogan*, *Default time zone*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

#### 4.1, ["Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

### Steps

#### Configuring the basic site information

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Basic site settings* (*admin/config/system/site-information*) to change the *Site name*, *Slogan*, administrative *Email address*, or the *Default front page* path.
2. Fill in the available fields as appropriate for your site.

| Field name    | Explanation                                                                                   | Example value                                          |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Site name     | Used to identify the site and displayed in browsers                                           | Anytown Farmers Market                                 |
| Slogan        | Usually displayed sitewide                                                                    | Farm Fresh Food                                        |
| Email address | Used as <i>From</i> address in automated email messages (registrations, password resets, etc) | <a href="mailto:info@example.com">info@example.com</a> |

SITE DETAILS

**Site name \***

**Slogan**


How this is used depends on your site's theme.

**Email address \***


The *From* address in automated emails sent during registration and new password requests, and other notifications. (Use an address ending in your site's domain to help prevent this email being flagged as spam.)

3. After editing the fields, click *Save configuration* to see the changes applied to the site.

## Configuring default Regional settings

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Regional settings* (*admin/config/regional/settings*).
2. Select the appropriate country from the *Default country* select list in the *Locale* section, and set which day will be displayed as *First day of week* on your site.
3. In the *Time zones* section, select the sitewide *Default time zone* from the list and configure user-specific time zones.

**▼ LOCALE**

**Default country**  
United States ▼

**First day of week**  
Sunday ▼

**▼ TIME ZONES**

**Default time zone**  
America/Los Angeles ▼

☐ Users may set their own time zone

☐ Remind users at login if their time zone is not set  
Only applied if users may set their own time zone.

**Time zone for new users**

☒ Default time zone

☐ Empty time zone

☐ Users may set their own time zone at registration  
Only applied if users may set their own time zone.

**Save configuration**

4. After editing the fields, click *Save configuration* to see the changes applied to the site.

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Getting started with Drupal 8 administration"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Sree Veturi](#), [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#), and [Antje Lorch](#).

## 4.3. Installing a Module

### Goal

Install a core module, or a contributed module whose files have already been uploaded to the site, through the administrative interface or using Drush.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

### Site prerequisites

If you want to use Drush to install modules, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

### Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install modules.

#### Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend* (*admin/modules*). The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Check the boxes for the module or modules you want to install. For example, check the box for the core Activity Tracker module.

|                                     |                  |                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ▼ CORE                              |                  |                                                                                                |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | Actions          | Perform tasks on specific events triggered within the system.                                  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Activity Tracker | Enables tracking of recent content for users.                                                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | Aggregator       | Aggregates syndicated content (RSS, RDF, and Atom feeds) from external sources.                |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Automated Cron   | Provides an automated way to run cron jobs, by executing them at the end of a server response. |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | Ban              | Enables banning of IP addresses.                                                               |

3. Click *Install*. The checked modules will be installed.

## Using Drush

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend* (*admin/modules*). The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Find the machine name of the module you want to install, by expanding the information area for the module. For instance, the core Activity Tracker module's machine name is *tracker*.
3. Run the following Drush command to install the module:

```
drush en tracker
```

## Expand your understanding

If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Additional resources

[Drush](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 4.4. Uninstalling Unused Modules

### Goal

Uninstall the core Search and History modules, as well as the core Activity Tracker module if you installed it in [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#), to reduce overhead.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

## Site prerequisites

- You must have at least one unused module on your site that you want to uninstall, such as the core Search module.
- If you want to use Drush to uninstall modules, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### #####"](#).

## Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to uninstall modules.

### Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend > Uninstall (admin/modules/uninstall)* where you will find the list of modules that are ready to be uninstalled.
2. Check the boxes for the modules you are uninstalling (*Search, History, and Activity Tracker*). Click *Uninstall* at the bottom of the page.

| UNINSTALL                           | NAME                    | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <b>Activity Tracker</b> | Enables tracking of recent content for users.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | <b>Automated Cron</b>   | Provides an automated way to run cron jobs, by executing them at the end of a server response.                                                                                                                                             |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | <b>Block</b>            | Controls the visual building blocks a page is constructed with. Blocks are boxes of content rendered into an area, or region, of a web page.<br>The following reason prevents Block from being uninstalled:<br>• Required by: Custom Block |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | <b>Breakpoint</b>       | Manage breakpoints and breakpoint groups for responsive designs.<br>The following reason prevents Breakpoint from being uninstalled:<br>• Required by: Toolbar                                                                             |

## تشاداي

You cannot uninstall a module if it is required by some other module(s) and/or functionality. For example, the core File module is required by the core Text Editor, CKEditor, and Image modules. It can't be uninstalled unless you uninstall its dependent module(s) and functionality first. A module that cannot be uninstalled yet will have a disabled checkbox, restricting you from uninstalling it.

3. Step 2 will prompt you to confirm the module uninstall request. Click *Uninstall*.

## Confirm uninstall ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Extend](#) » [Uninstall](#)

The following modules will be completely uninstalled from your site, and *all data from these modules will be lost!*

- Activity Tracker
- History
- Search

### ▼ CONFIGURATION DELETIONS

The listed configuration will be deleted.

#### Block

- Search

#### Search page

- Content
- Users

Would you like to continue with uninstalling the above?

**Uninstall**

**Cancel**

## Using Drush

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend* (*admin/modules*). The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Find the machine name of the module you want to uninstall, by expanding the information area for the module. For instance, the core Activity Tracker module's machine name is *tracker*.
3. Run the following Drush command to uninstall the module:

```
drush pm-uninstall tracker
```

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)

- [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)
- You can also uninstall the core Comment module by following these steps, but only after comment fields have been removed, which is a side effect of [#### 6.2, "Deleting a Content Type"](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

# 4.5. Configuring User Account Settings

## Goal

Turn off the ability for people to register user accounts on the site. Also, review and/or edit the email messages generated by the site for events related to user accounts.

## Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > People > Account settings* (*admin/config/people/accounts*).
2. Under *Registration and cancellation*, select *Administrators only* as the people with permissions to register user accounts. You can check *Require email verification when a visitor creates an account* in case you want to change the settings for account registration later on.



**REGISTRATION AND CANCELLATION**

**Who can register accounts?**

- ☒ Administrators only
- ☐ Visitors
- ☐ Visitors, but administrator approval is required

☒ Require email verification when a visitor creates an account  
 New users will be required to validate their email address prior to logging into the site, and will be assigned a system-generated password. With this setting disabled, users will be logged in immediately upon registering, and may select their own passwords during registration.

☒ Enable password strength indicator

**When cancelling a user account**

- ☒ Disable the account and keep its content.
- ☐ Disable the account and unpublish its content.
- ☐ Delete the account and make its content belong to the *Anonymous* user.

Users with the *Select method for cancelling account* or *Administer users* [permissions](#) can override this default method.

- Optionally, change the default email address from which user account notifications from the farmers market website will be sent. This will help you maintain a separate email address from the one used for the website in general. For example, this email address for user account notifications will be useful for a staff member(s) communicating with vendors.

#### Notification email address

The email address to be used as the 'from' address for all account notifications listed below. If 'Visitors, but administrator approval is required' is selected above, a notification email will also be sent to this address for any new registrations. Leave empty to use the default system email address (*info@example.com*).

- Optionally, edit the email templates in the *Emails* section to customize automated emails.

There are seven email templates available with the core. They are meant for different user-specific occasions. All of them can be personalized and three can be disabled via checkboxes: activation, blocking, and cancellation.

You can send out your own text (for example, welcoming the new vendors for whom accounts were just created) by editing the the *Welcome (new user created by administrator)* template.

Emails

| Welcome (new user created by administrator) | ▼ WELCOME (NEW USER CREATED BY ADMINISTRATOR)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Welcome (awaiting approval)                 | <p>Edit the welcome email messages sent to new member accounts created by an administrator. Available variables are: [site:name], [site:url], [user:display-name], [user:account-name], [user:mail], [site:login-url], [site:url-brief], [user:edit-url], [user:one-time-login-url], [user:cancel-url].</p> <p><b>Subject</b></p> <p>An administrator created an account for you at [site:name]</p> <p><b>Body</b></p> <p>[user:display-name],</p> <p>A site administrator at [site:name] has created an account for you. You may now log in by clicking this link or copying and pasting it into your browser:</p> <p>[user:one-time-login-url]</p> <p>This link can only be used once to log in and will lead you to a page where you can set your password.</p> <p>After setting your password, you will be able to log in at [site:login-url] in the future using:</p> <p>username: [user:name]<br/>password: Your password</p> <p>-- [site:name] team</p> |
| Admin (user awaiting approval)              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Welcome (no approval required)              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Account activation                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Account blocked                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Account cancellation confirmation           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Account canceled                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Password recovery                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

- Click *Save configuration* to save the changes.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)
- [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#)

## Related concepts

See [### 7, ##### #####](#) for more information about user accounts and permissions.

## Additional resources

[Security Guide](#) can help you with a more safety-focused approach to configuration.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 4.6. Configuring the Theme

### Goal

Edit the settings of the default core Bartik theme to change the color scheme and to add a logo.

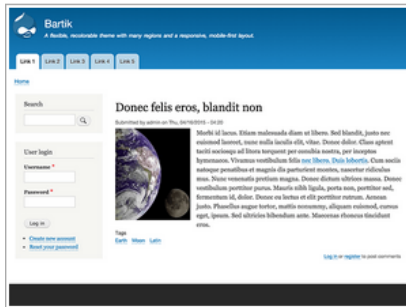
### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance (admin/appearance)*.
2. Under *Installed themes*, you will find Bartik listed as your default theme. Under *Bartik (default theme)*, click *Settings*.

#### Installed themes



#### Bartik 8.2.0-dev (default theme)

A flexible, recolorable theme with many regions and a responsive, mobile-first layout.

[Settings](#)

3. Under *Color scheme*, click inside each color build box and type the proper color codes you would like to add. For example, use the following colors:

| Area                     | Color                  |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Header background top    | #7db84a (green)        |
| Header background bottom | #2a3524 (dark green)   |
| Main background          | #ffffff (white)        |
| Sidebar background       | #f8bc65 (light orange) |
| Sidebar borders          | #e96b3c (orange)       |
| Footer background        | #2a3524 (dark green)   |
| Title and slogan         | #ffffff (white)        |

| Area       | Color                |
|------------|----------------------|
| Text color | #000000 (black)      |
| Link color | #2a3524 (dark green) |

Note: You can also use the color wheel on the right to select colors of your choice. The web color codes will be added for you.

**COLOR SCHEME**

Color set Custom

Header background top #7db84a

Header background bottom #2a3524

Main background #ffffff

Sidebar background #f8bc65

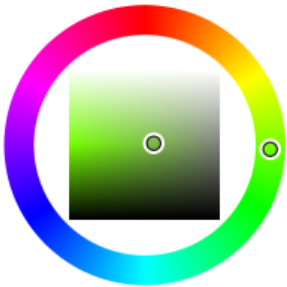
Sidebar borders #e96b3c

Footer background #2a3524

Title and slogan #ffffff

Text color #000000

Link color #2a3524



- Under *Logo image*, uncheck *Use the logo supplied by the theme*.

**LOGO IMAGE SETTINGS**

☐ Use the default logo supplied by the theme

**Path to custom logo**
  

  
Examples: logo.svg (for a file in the public filesystem), public://logo.svg, or core/themes/bartik/logo.svg.

**Upload logo image**
  
 No file selected.

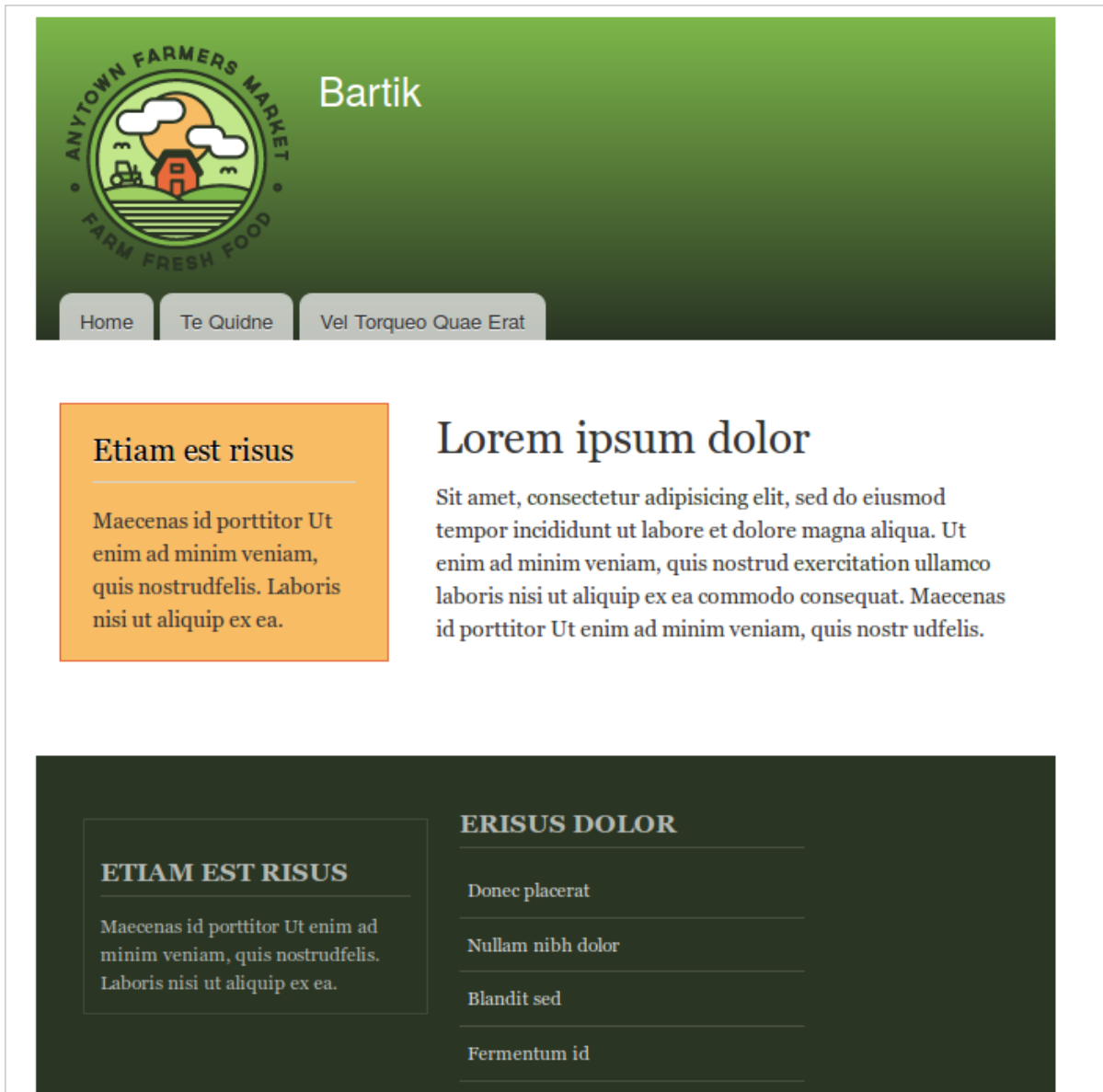
If you don't have direct file access to the server, use this field to upload your logo.

5. Under *Upload logo image*, locate a logo file and upload it to your site. Note: You can also set a universal logo for all themes under *Appearance > Settings (admin/appearance/settings)*. A custom logo for your theme will override the universal logo.

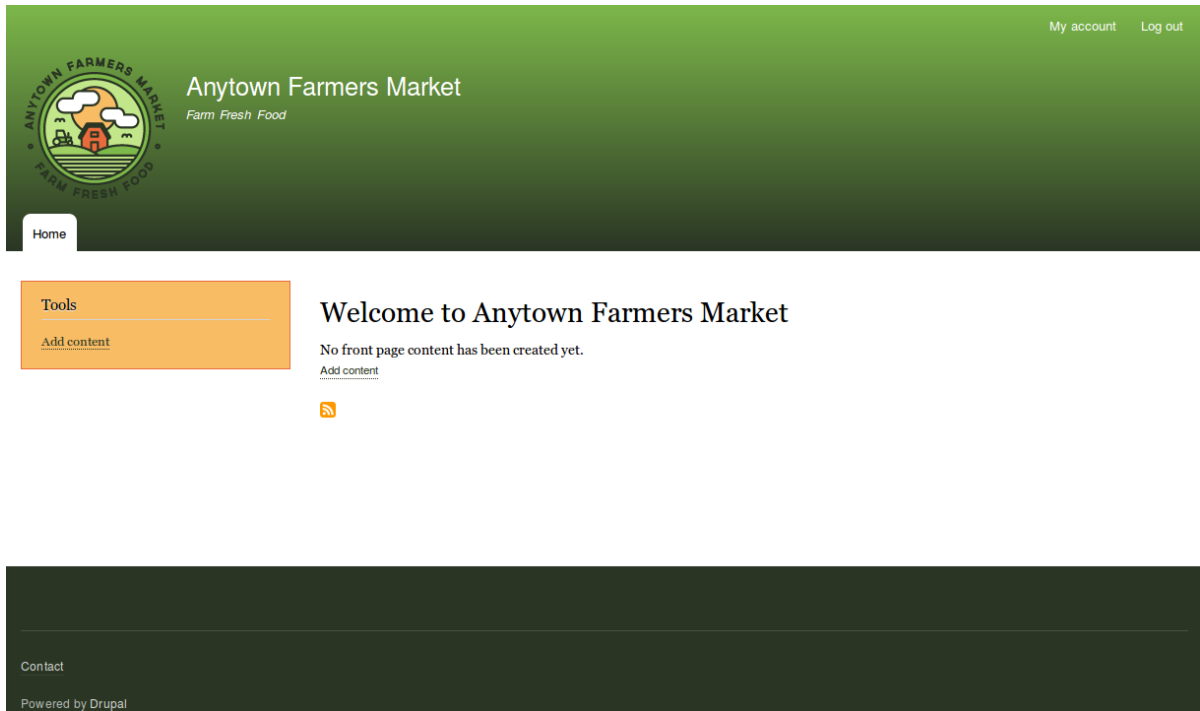
Once you have selected the file you would like to upload, you will see its filename next to the *Choose File* or *Browse* button in your browser.

6. In order to save your changes and see the updated colors and logo on your site, click *Save configuration* at the bottom of the page.

Note: Under *Color scheme*, there is a *Preview* section that displays a sample of how your website will look with the new settings.



7. Click *Return to site* or *Home* in the toolbar to verify that you have updated the core Bartik theme settings for your website.



## Expand your understanding

- [#### 11.4, “Finding Themes”](#)
- [#### 11.5, “Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org”](#)
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, “Clearing the Cache”](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Ann Greazel](#), [Amanda Luker](#) at [Advomatic](#), and [Jack Haas](#).

---

# هداس هحفص تیری دم 5. لصف

## 5.1. Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs

### What is a URL?

URL is the abbreviation for "Uniform Resource Locator", which is the page's address on the web. It is the "name" by which a browser identifies a page to display. In the example "Visit us at *example.com*.", *example.com* is the URL for the home page of your website. Users use URLs to locate content on the web.

### What is a Path?

A path is the unique, last part of the URL for a specific function or piece of content. For example, for a page whose full URL is *http://example.com/node/7*, the path is *node/7*.

Here are some examples of paths you might find in your site:

- *node/7*
- *taxonomy/term/6*
- *admin/content/comment*
- *user/login*
- *user/3*

### What is an Alias?

The core software has a feature called "URL Alias" that allows you to provide a more understandable name to the content. So, if you have an "About Us" page with the path *node/7*, you can set up an alias so that your visitors will see it as *http://www.example.com/AboutUs*. The core Path module, which supports URL aliasing, provides this functionality.

### Related topics

- [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)



## Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#) from "[URL aliases](#)", and "[Understanding Drupal paths](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

## 5.2. Creating a Content Item

### Goal

Create and publish a content item that will be used as the home page of the site.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The *Basic page* content type must exist. This is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Basic page (node/add/page)*. The *Create Basic page* form appears.
2. Click *Edit summary*.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name | Explanation                                                                                                                                  | Value                                                      |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Title      | Title of the page. Will also be used as a meta tag in the source code, URL alias, and as label of the content item in administration screens | Home                                                       |
| Summary    | Summary of the value of the body field. Can be used as teaser in overview pages                                                              | Opening times and location of City Market.                 |
| Body       | Full content of the page                                                                                                                     | Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market! |

| Field name                    | Explanation                             | Value                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                               |                                         | Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September<br><br>Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown |
| URL path settings > URL alias | Alternate relative path for the content | /home                                                                                                             |

By clicking the *Source* button in the rich text editor toolbar, you can see the HTML source code of the text that you are editing.

### Create Basic page ☆

Home » Add content

**Title \***  
Home

**Summary (Hide summary)**  
Opening times and location of City Market

Leave blank to use trimmed value of full text as the summary.

**Body**

B I [Icons] Format [Dropdown] Source

[Rich Text Editor Area]

Text format: Basic HTML [Dropdown] About text formats ?

Save and publish [Dropdown] Preview

**Last saved:** Not saved yet  
**Author:** admin  
☒ Create new revision

**Revision log message**

[Text Area]

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

**MENU SETTINGS**

**URL PATH SETTINGS**

**URL alias**  
/home

Specify an alternative path by which this data can be accessed. For example, type "/about" when writing an about page.

**AUTHORING INFORMATION**

**PROMOTION OPTIONS**

- Click *Preview* to ensure everything looks like expected.
- Click *Back to content editing*.
- Click *Save and publish*. The content is saved and can be found on the *Content* page.
- Follow the same steps to create an About page, with title "About", and a body telling about the history of the farmer's market.

## Expand your understanding

- #### 5.5, "[Designating a Front Page for your Site](#)"

- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

## Related concepts

- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)
- [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "About nodes"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Agnes Kiss](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 5.3. Editing a Content Item

### Goal

Update the hours on the Home page content item.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)

### Site prerequisites

A content item for the Home page must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (*admin/content*).

2. If the content item you want to edit was updated or created recently, it should appear near the top of the content list on that page. If not, you can use the *Content type*, *Title*, or other filters to locate the content item.

Published status:  Content type:  Title:  Language:

With selection:

Hide lower priority columns

| <input type="checkbox"/> | TITLE | CONTENT TYPE | AUTHOR | STATUS    | UPDATED            | OPERATIONS                          |
|--------------------------|-------|--------------|--------|-----------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | About | Basic page   | admin  | Published | 07/06/2016 - 15:55 | <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Home  | Basic page   | admin  | Published | 07/06/2016 - 15:55 | <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |

3. Click *Edit* in the row of the content item you want to edit (Home), to open the content editing form. Update the opening hours in the *Body* field. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#) for an explanation of the fields and a screenshot.
4. Check *Create new revision* in the box on the right, if it is not already checked, and enter a *Revision log message* explaining what changes you are making (for example, you might enter "Updated opening hours"). This text will appear in the revision log for the page.

**Published**

**Last saved:** 07/06/2016 - 15:55

**Author:** admin

☒ Create new revision

**Revision log message**

Updated opening hours

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

5. Click *Save and keep published* to save your changes.
6. You will be redirected back to the *Content* administrative page, and there should be a message showing that the content item was updated.

✓ Basic page *Home* has been updated.

## Expand your understanding

As an alternative to the first two steps above, you can also reach the content edit form as follows:

1. Starting from your site's home page, use the site's navigation menus to locate the page where the content you want to edit is displayed to visitors.
2. Most themes will display an *Edit* link or tab near the top of that page to people with permission to edit the page; clicking the link will take you to the full content edit form.
3. You could also use the in-place editor (refer to [#### 5.4, "Editing with the In-Place Editor"](#)) from this page.

### Attributions

Written by [Chris Dart](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 5.4. Editing with the In-Place Editor

### Goal

Use the in-place editor to add information to the About page without opening the full editor page.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "##### # #####"](#)
- [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

- [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

## Site prerequisites

The About page you want to edit must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

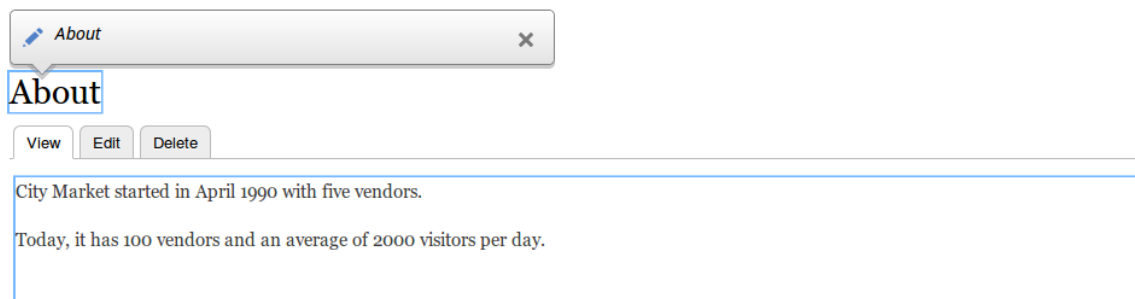
## Steps

Navigate to the About page to edit content with the in-place editor. If the page has not yet been added to a navigation menu, you can find and open it by following these steps:

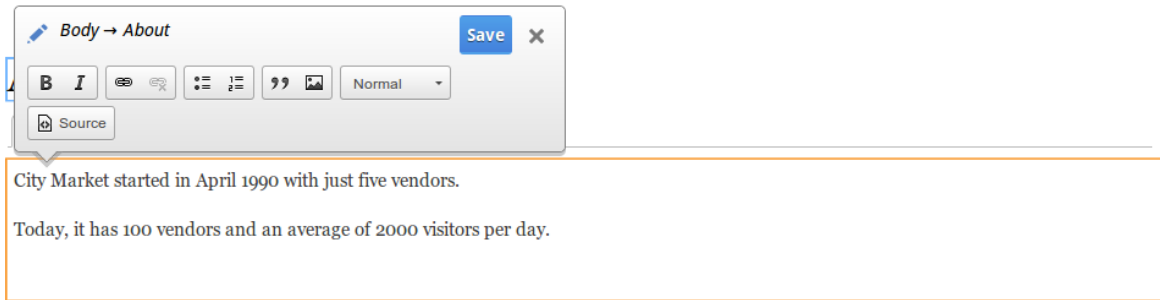
1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (*admin/content*).
2. If the content item you want to edit was updated or created recently, it should appear near the top of the content list on that page. If not, you can use *Type*, *Title*, or other filters to locate the content item.
3. Find the About page and click it.

Once the content you want to edit is being viewed in your browser, follow these steps to use the quick editor:

1. Find the section of the page that displays the content you want to edit, and turn on quick editing mode using the *Quick edit* contextual link (see [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for instructions on how to access contextual links). You will see each editable field on this content item outlined in blue; also, a hovering dialog box will appear.



2. Click the *Body* text area to begin editing. The *Body* field supports a rich text editor. The editing toolbar will be displayed in a hovering dialog box.
3. Add some information about City Market. A *Save* button will appear in the hovering dialog box, and the field outline will change color.



4. If you are satisfied with your edits, click *Save* in the hovering dialog box. If not, click "x" to discard your edits, and confirm. Either way, quick editing mode will be turned off.

## Expand your understanding

Try using the full editor on the same content (see [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)) and note that there is much more information that can be edited that is not available in the quick editor.

### Attributions

Written and edited by [David Lee](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 5.5. Designating a Front Page for your Site

### Goal

Configure which content item is displayed as the front page of your website.

### Site prerequisites

The content item that you want to designate as the front page of your site must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Basic site settings* (*admin/config/system/site-information*).

2. Under *Front page*, replace */node* with the name of the page you would like to make the home page. To use the home page that was previously created, provide its path */home*. Click *Save configuration*.

▼ FRONT PAGE

**Default front page**

http://example.com

Optionally, specify a relative URL to display as the front page. Leave blank to display the default front page.

3. Navigate to the home page to verify that it displays content as configured by you.



## Expand your understanding

- [#### 5.7, “Adding a Page to the Navigation”](#)
- Follow [#### 5.2, “Creating a Content Item”](#) to create an error page to be used as a 404 (page not found) or <sup>403</sup> (not authorized) response on your site. Then following the steps here, you can designate it as the error response, in the *Error pages* section of the configuration.

## Related concepts

[#### 5.6, “Concept: Menu”](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Ann Greazel](#), [Jack Haas](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).



## 5.6. Concept: Menu

### What is a menu?

Menus are a collection of links (menu items) used to navigate a website. The core Menu UI module provides an interface to control and customize the menu system. Menus are primarily displayed as a hierarchical list of links. By default, new menu items are placed inside a built-in menu labeled *Main navigation*, but administrators can also create custom menus.

The core Standard installation profile contains five menus:

#### Main navigation

Links to sections intended for site visitors. They are usually created by site administrators.

#### Administration

Links to administrative tasks. This menu mainly contains links supplied by modules on your site.

#### User account menu

Links to tasks associated with the user account such as *My account* and *Log out*.

#### Footer

Links to important pages within the site intended for the footer. They are usually created by site administrators.

#### Tools

Links to tasks necessary for site visitors. Some modules feature their links here.

You can customize menus in the following ways, using the menu administration functionality:

- Creating new custom menus.
- Adding new menu items.
- Reordering menu items by setting their "weight" or by dragging them into place.
- Renaming menu items.
- Changing the link title (the tooltip that appears when you mouse over a menu item).
- Moving a menu item into a different menu by editing its *Parent* property.

A menu item will only be shown to a visitor if they have the rights to view the page it links to. For example, the admin menu item is not shown to visitors who are not logged in.

### Related topics

- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)
- [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#)

- To display a menu, you will need to place the block that corresponds to the menu in a region of your theme; see [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#), [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#), and [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#). The core Standard installation profile places all of the menus it defines except Administration in regions of the core Bartik theme. The core Toolbar module, which is installed by the core Standard installation profile, displays the Administration menu; it is also displayed by the contributed Admin Toolbar module.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Ajay Viswambharan](#), [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

# 5.7. Adding a Page to the Navigation

## Goal

Add a page to the navigation. For example, the About page.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

## Site prerequisites

The About page content item must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (*admin/content*).
2. Find the About page, and click *Edit* in that row. The content editing form appears.

| <input type="checkbox"/> | TITLE                 | CONTENT TYPE | AUTHOR                | STATUS    | UPDATED            | OPERATIONS             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------|--------------------|------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <a href="#">Home</a>  | Basic page   | <a href="#">admin</a> | Published | 07/06/2016 - 12:52 | <a href="#">Edit</a> ▼ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <a href="#">About</a> | Basic page   | <a href="#">admin</a> | Published | 07/06/2016 - 12:52 | <a href="#">Edit</a> ▼ |

3. Click *Menu settings* on the right to expand it.
4. Check *Provide a menu link* for the menu options to appear.
5. Enter values from the table below:

| Field name      | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Example value         |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Menu link title | Title that will be displayed in the menu                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | About                 |
| Description     | Text that will be displayed when a visitor hovers over the link                                                                                                                                                                                                   | History of the market |
| Parent item     | Location of the page in the menu hierarchy. For example, if you choose <i>&lt;Main navigation&gt;</i> , the page will appear in the highest level of the navigation. By choosing another menu item as parent, you can create a menu hierarchy of multiple levels. | <Main navigation>     |
| Weight          | The order in which the page should appear in the menu (lower-weighted menu items will be shown before higher-weighted menu items)                                                                                                                                 | -2                    |

▼

MENU SETTINGS (ABOUT)

☒ Provide a menu link

**Menu link title**

**Description**  
  
Shown when hovering over the menu link.

**Parent item**  
 ▼

**Weight**

Menu links with lower weights are displayed before links with higher weights.

6. Click *Save and keep published* to save the changes. Click *Home* or *Return to site* in the navigation bar to see the result, which could look like the picture below.



## Expand your understanding

[#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with menus"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from ["Working with Menus"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#); edited by [Jack Haas](#).

## 5.8. Changing the Order of Navigation

### Goal

Reorder the items in a menu.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)
- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)

### Site prerequisites

Home and About pages must exist in the main navigation menu. See [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Menus* ([admin/structure/menus](#)) where all menus on your site are listed. Click *Edit Menu* from the *Operations* dropdown for *Main navigation*. You can also reach this page using contextual links (refer to [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)) for the menu.

| TITLE             | DESCRIPTION                              | OPERATIONS  |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Administration    | Administrative task links                | Edit menu ▾ |
| Footer            | Site information links                   | Edit menu ▾ |
| Main navigation   | Site section links                       | Edit menu ▾ |
| Tools             | User tool links, often added by modules  | Edit menu ▾ |
| User account menu | Links related to the active user account | Edit menu ▾ |

2. The *Edit menu* page will display a list of each item in the menu you chose (*Main navigation*).

| MENU LINK | ENABLED                             | OPERATIONS |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| ⊕ About   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Edit ▾     |
| ⊕ Home    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Edit       |

Save

3. Use the cross bar handles to reorder the menu items. Drag the Home menu item above the About menu item so that it appears first.

⚠ \*You have unsaved changes.

| MENU LINK | ENABLED                             | OPERATIONS |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| ⊕ Home    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Edit       |
| ⊕ About   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Edit ▾     |

Save

4. Click *Save*.
5. The home page now displays the main navigation with the Home menu item displayed first.



## Expand your understanding

Add a menu item called *Contact*, leading to the */contact* page, to your Main navigation menu.

The contact page is provided by the core Contact module; you may want to edit its layout and fields (see [#### 6.9, “Changing Content Entry Forms”](#)).

## Related concepts

[#### 5.6, “Concept: Menu”](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Ann Greazel](#).

---

# ی‌اوت‌حم رات‌خاس می‌ظنت 6. ل‌صرف

## 6.1. Adding a Content Type

### Goal

Add and configure a new content type Vendor.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "##### # #####"](#)

### Site prerequisites

You need to have a plan in place for your content structure. See [#### 2.5, "#####"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). The *Content types* page appears showing all the available types of content.
2. Click *Add content type*. The *Add content type* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name  | Explanation                         | Example value              |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Name        | Name of the content type            | Vendor                     |
| Description | Explain the use of the content type | Information about a vendor |



[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#)

Individual content types can have different fields, behaviors, and permissions assigned to them.

**Name \***

Machine name: vendor [\[Edit\]](#)

The human-readable name of this content type. This text will be displayed as part of the list on the *Add content* page. This name must be unique.

**Description**

Information about a vendor

This text will be displayed on the *Add new content* page.

3. In the vertical tab *Submission form settings*, configure the form that is used for creating and editing content of this type. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name                           | Explanation                                                                           | Example value |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Title field label                    | Label of the Title field that is shown when editing or creating content of this type. | Vendor name   |
| Preview before submitting            | Option to choose whether you should preview the content before submitting.            | Optional      |
| Explanation or submission guidelines | Instructions for creating or editing content.                                         | (Leave blank) |

### Submission form settings

Vendor name

#### Publishing options

Published , Create new revision

#### Display settings

Don't display post information

#### Menu settings

#### Title field label \*

#### Preview before submitting

☐ Disabled  
☒ Optional  
☐ Required

#### Explanation or submission guidelines

This text will be displayed at the top of the page when creating or editing content of this type.

4. In the vertical tab *Publishing options*, decide on default options for new content of this type. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name             | Explanation                                                                      | Example value |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Published              | Make the content item published by default.                                      | Checked       |
| Promoted to front page | In a default website, this setting can be used to show content on the homepage.  | Unchecked     |
| Sticky at top of lists | In a default website, this setting can be used to keep content on top of a list. | Unchecked     |
| Create new revision    | Create a new revision each time the vendor is being edited.                      | Checked       |

Changing these settings does not affect the content items that have already been created.

|                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Submission form settings</b><br>Vendor name               | <b>Default options</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Published<br><input type="checkbox"/> Promoted to front page<br><input type="checkbox"/> Sticky at top of lists<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create new revision<br>Users with the <i>Administer content</i> permission will be able to override these options. |
| <b>Publishing options</b><br>Published , Create new revision |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Display settings</b><br>Don't display post information    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Menu settings</b>                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

5. In the vertical tab *Display settings*, decide if the author and publication date will be visible in the content item. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name                          | Explanation                                                           | Example value |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Display author and date information | Display the author username and publication date on each vendor page. | Unchecked     |

|                                                              |                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Submission form settings</b><br>Vendor name               | <input type="checkbox"/> Display author and date information<br>Author username and publish date will be displayed. |
| <b>Publishing options</b><br>Published , Create new revision |                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Display settings</b><br>Don't display post information    |                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Menu settings</b>                                         |                                                                                                                     |

6. In the vertical tab *Menu settings*, fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name      | Explanation                                                                                                           | Example value |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Available menus | Menus that this type of content can be added to. Vendors do not need to appear in menus, so uncheck all menu options. | Unchecked     |

|                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Submission form settings</b><br>Vendor name               | <b>Available menus</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Administration<br><input type="checkbox"/> Footer<br><input type="checkbox"/> Main navigation<br><input type="checkbox"/> Tools<br><input type="checkbox"/> User account menu<br>The menus available to place links in for this content type. |
| <b>Publishing options</b><br>Published , Create new revision |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Display settings</b><br>Don't display post information    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Menu settings</b>                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

7. Click *Save and manage fields* to save the content type. The *Manage fields* page appears that allows you to add fields to the content type. See [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

**Manage fields** ☆

[Edit](#)
[Manage fields](#)
[Manage form display](#)
[Manage display](#)

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor

✓ The content type *Vendor* has been added.

+ Add field

| LABEL | MACHINE NAME | FIELD TYPE                           | OPERATIONS           |
|-------|--------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Body  | body         | Text (formatted, long, with summary) | <a href="#">Edit</a> |

8. Follow the same steps to create a content type for recipes. Example values for the fields in the forms, where they are different from the steps above:

| Field name                       | Example value                  |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Name                             | Recipe                         |
| Description                      | A recipe submitted by a vendor |
| Submission form settings - Title | Recipe name                    |

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

- Install and configure the [contributed Pathauto module](#) so that content items get automatically generated URLs/path aliases. See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more on URLs within your site, [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#) for instructions on finding contributed modules, and [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#) for instructions on downloading and installing contributed modules.

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Sree Veturi](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 6.2. Deleting a Content Type

### Goal

Delete the unneeded content type *Article*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The *Article* content type must exist. It is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). The *Content types* page appears.
2. Click *Delete* in the *Operations* dropdown button for the *Article* content type.

**Content types** ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#)

[+ Add content type](#)

| NAME       | DESCRIPTION                                                                             | OPERATIONS                                                                                                                       |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Article    | Use <i>articles</i> for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts. | <div> <div>Manage fields</div> <div>Manage form display</div> <div>Manage display</div> <div>Edit</div> <div>Delete</div> </div> |
| Basic page | Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.             |                                                                                                                                  |
| Recipe     | Recipe submitted by a vendor                                                            |                                                                                                                                  |
| Vendor     | Information about a vendor                                                              | <div>Manage fields</div>                                                                                                         |

3. A confirmation page is displayed. Click *Delete*.

**Are you sure you want to delete the content type *Article*?**

☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Article](#)

This action cannot be undone.

**CONFIGURATION DELETIONS**

The listed configuration will be deleted.

**Entity form display**

- node.article.default

**Entity view display**

- node.article.default
- node.article.rss
- node.article.teaser

**Field**

- Body
- Comments
- Image
- Tags

**RDF mapping**

- node.article

Delete

Cancel

4. The *Content types* page appears with a confirmation message saying that the content type has been deleted:

The content type *Article* has been deleted.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Sree Veturi](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 6.3. Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type

### Goal

Add a link field and an image field to the Vendor content type.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The Vendor content type must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

### Steps

Add the fields Vendor URL and Main image to the Vendor content type.

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). Then click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the Vendor content type. The *Manage fields* page appears.
2. Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. You can either create a new field for the content type or re-use an existing field.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name      | Explanation                                   | Value      |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------|
| Add a new field | Field type                                    | Link       |
| Label           | Label that is visible in administration pages | Vendor URL |

A machine name is automatically generated, based on the *Label* value. Click *Edit* if you want to override the default name.

## Add field ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Vendor](#) » [Manage fields](#)

### Add a new field

Link ▼

### Label \*

Vendor URL Machine name: field\_vendor\_url [Edit]

Save and continue

- Click *Save and continue*. The page Vendor URL appears which lets you set the allowed number of values. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name               | Explanation                              | Value                 |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Allowed number of values | The number of values that can be entered | Limited, <sup>1</sup> |

- Click *Save field settings*. The page *Vendor URL settings for Basic page* appears which allows you to configure the field. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name        | Explanation                                   | Value               |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Label             | Label that is visible in the content form     | Vendor URL          |
| Help text         | The instruction that is shown below the field | (leave blank)       |
| Required field    | Whether the field is required or not          | Unchecked           |
| Allowed link type | The kind of links that can be entered         | External links only |
| Allow link text   | Whether a link text can be entered            | Disabled            |



### Vendor URL settings for Vendor ☆

Edit
Field settings

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor » Manage fields

**Label \***

Vendor URL

**Help text**

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.  
Allowed HTML tags: <a> <b> <big> <code> <del> <em> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <span> <strong> <sub> <sup> <tt> <ol> <ul> <li> <p> <br> <img>  
This field supports tokens.

☐ Required field

▼ **DEFAULT VALUE**

The default value for this field, used when creating new content.

**Vendor URL**

This must be an external URL such as <http://example.com>.

**Allowed link type**

☐ Internal links only  
☒ External links only  
☐ Both internal and external links

**Allow link text**

☒ Disabled  
☐ Optional  
☐ Required

6. Click *Save settings*. The Vendor URL has been added to the content type. Continue creating the Main image field.
7. Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name      | Explanation                                   | Value      |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------|
| Add a new field | Field type                                    | Image      |
| Label           | Label that is visible in administration pages | Main image |

8. Click *Save and continue*. The page Main image appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name               | Explanation                              | Value                 |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Allowed number of values | The number of values that can be entered | Limited, <sup>1</sup> |

You can set a default image here. This will be used when you do not provide an image when creating a Vendor content item.

9. Click *Save field settings*. The page *Main image settings for Basic page* appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name               | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                            | Value               |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Label                    | Label that is visible in the content form                                                                                                                                              | Main image          |
| Help text                | The instruction that is shown below the field                                                                                                                                          | (leave blank)       |
| Required field           | Whether the field is required or not                                                                                                                                                   | Checked             |
| Allowed file extensions  | The type of images that can be uploaded                                                                                                                                                | png, gif, jpg, jpeg |
| File directory           | The directory where the files will be stored. By providing a file directory value, you ensure that all images uploaded via the Main image field will be located in the same directory. | vendors             |
| Minimum image resolution | The minimum resolution of the uploaded image                                                                                                                                           | 600 x 600           |
| Maximum upload size      | The maximum file size of the uploaded image                                                                                                                                            | 5 MB                |
| Enable Alt field         | Whether an alternative text can be entered                                                                                                                                             | Checked             |
| Alt field required       | Whether an alternative text is required                                                                                                                                                | Checked             |

### Main image settings for Vendor ☆

[Edit](#) [Field settings](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Vendor](#) » [Manage fields](#)

**Label \***  
Main image

**Help text**

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.  
Allowed HTML tags: <a> <b> <big> <code> <del> <em> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <span> <strong> <sub> <sup> <tt> <ol> <ul> <li> <p> <br> <img>  
This field supports tokens.

☒ Required field

**DEFAULT IMAGE**

If no image is uploaded, this image will be shown on display and will override the field's default image.

**Image**  
 No file selected.  
Image to be shown if no image is uploaded.

**Alternative text**  
  
This text will be used by screen readers, search engines, and when the image cannot be loaded.

**Title**  
  
The title attribute is used as a tooltip when the mouse hovers over the image.

**Allowed file extensions \***  
  
Separate extensions with a space or comma and do not include the leading dot.

**File directory**

10. Click *Save settings*. Main image has been added to the content type.

### Manage fields ☆

[Edit](#) [Manage fields](#) [Manage form display](#) [Manage display](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Vendor](#)

✓ Saved Main image configuration.

[+ Add field](#)

| LABEL      | MACHINE NAME     | FIELD TYPE                           | OPERATIONS           |
|------------|------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Body       | body             | Text (formatted, long, with summary) | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Main image | field_main_image | Image                                | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Vendor URL | field_vendor_url | Link                                 | <a href="#">Edit</a> |

11. Add a Main image field to the Recipe content type, using similar steps. Start by navigating to the Recipe content type's *Manage Fields* page in step 1. Then skip to step 7 and follow the remaining steps, but reuse the existing Main image field you created for the Vendor content type rather than creating a new field. In subsequent steps, some of the configuration screens will not be available, because of the field reuse.

12. Create two Vendor content items (see [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)) called "Happy Farm" and "Sweet Honey". Make sure that they include images and URLs.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Add a field to a content type"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Sree Veturi](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 6.4. Concept: Reference Fields

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)

### What is a reference field?

A *reference field* is a field that represents a relationship between an entity and one or more other entities, which may belong to the same or different entity type. The three most commonly-used reference fields are:

#### Content reference

A reference to a content item. For example, you might want to connect recipes to the vendors who submitted them. You would set up a content reference field called Submitted by referencing Vendor content items on the Recipe content type.

#### Taxonomy term reference

A reference to a taxonomy term. For example, you might want to connect recipes to their ingredients. You would set up a taxonomy term reference field called Ingredients on the Recipe content type. This reference field will point to the vocabulary Ingredients.

#### User reference

A reference to a user account. For example, you might want to connect recipes with their chefs. You would set up a user reference field called Chefs on the Recipe content type.

## Related topics

[#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)

#### Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 6.5. Concept: Taxonomy

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#)

## What is Taxonomy?

*Taxonomy* is used to classify website content. One common example of taxonomy is the tags used to classify or categorize posts in a blog website; the farmers market website could use an ingredients taxonomy to classify recipes. Individual taxonomy items are known as *terms* (the blog tags or recipe ingredients in these examples); and a set of terms is known as a *vocabulary* (the set of all blog post tags, or the set of all recipe ingredients in these examples). Technically, taxonomy terms are an entity type and the entity subtypes are the vocabularies. Like other entities, taxonomy terms can have fields attached; for instance, you could set up an image field to contain an icon for each term.

An individual vocabulary can organize its terms in a hierarchy, or it could be flat. For example, blog tags normally have a flat structure, while a recipe ingredients vocabulary could be hierarchical (for example, tomatoes could be a sub-term of vegetables, and under tomatoes, you could have green and red tomatoes).

Taxonomy terms are normally attached as reference fields to other content entities, which is how you can use them to classify content. When you set up a taxonomy reference field, you can let users enter terms in two ways:

### Free tagging

New terms can be created right on the content editing form.

### Fixed list of terms

The list of terms is curated and managed outside the content editing form, and users can only choose from the existing list when editing content.

Taxonomy reference fields can be added to any entity, such as user accounts, custom blocks, or regular content items. If you use them to classify regular content items, your site will automatically be set up with taxonomy listing pages for each term; each of these pages lists all of the content items that are classified with that term. For example, if you created several recipes that all had carrots as an ingredient, you might see something like this on the Carrots taxonomy listing page:

## Carrots

### Fresh Carrots

Serve multi-colored carrots on a plate for dinner.

[Read more](#)

### Green Salad

Chop up your favorite vegetables and put them in a bowl.

[Read more](#)

## Related topics

- [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#).
- The listing pages are views, which are covered in [### 9, ##### #### # # ##### # # Views](#).

## Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) from ["Organizing content with taxonomies"](#) and ["About taxonomies"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 6.6. Setting Up a Taxonomy

### Goal

Create an Ingredients vocabulary and add it to the Recipe content type as a field that can contain an unlimited number of values and that allows adding new terms to the vocabulary.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # #####" #####](#)
- [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The Recipe content type must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Taxonomy* (*admin/structure/taxonomy*). You will see the *Tags* vocabulary that was created with the core Standard installation profile.

### Taxonomy

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#)

Taxonomy is for categorizing content. Terms are grouped into vocabularies. For example, a vocabulary called "Fruit" would contain the terms "Apple" and "Banana".

+ Add vocabulary

| VOCABULARY NAME | OPERATIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tags            | <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 2px 10px; border-radius: 3px; display: inline-block;">List terms</div> <div style="background-color: #ccc; width: 15px; height: 15px; border-radius: 50%; text-align: center; line-height: 15px; margin-left: 5px;">▼</div> |

2. Click *Add vocabulary*, and fill in the values below.

| Field name | Explanation                | Example value |
|------------|----------------------------|---------------|
| Name       | The name of the vocabulary | Ingredients   |

| Field name  | Explanation                       | Example value |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| Description | A brief note about the vocabulary | (Leave blank) |

## Add vocabulary ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#)

**Name \***

**Description**

**Save**

3. Click *Save*. You will be taken to the *Ingredients* page, which shows a list of all the terms in this vocabulary.

## Ingredients ☆

[List](#)

[Edit](#)

[Manage fields](#)

[Manage form display](#)

[Manage display](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#) » [Ingredients](#)

✓ Created new vocabulary *Ingredients*.

You can reorganize the terms in *Ingredients* using their drag-and-drop handles, and group terms under a parent term by sliding them under and to the right of the parent.

**+ Add term**

[Show row weights](#)

**NAME**

**WEIGHT**

**OPERATIONS**

No terms available. [Add term](#).

4. Click *Add term*. Enter "Butter" in the *Name* field. Click *Save*.









## Add term ☆


[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#) » [Ingredients](#)

### Name \*

The term name.

### Description

**B** **I**






Format

 Source

Text format Basic HTML

[About text formats ?](#)

A description of the term.

### RELATIONS

### URL alias

Specify an alternative path by which this data can be accessed. For example, type "/about" when writing an about page.

- You will receive a confirmation about the term you created. Add more terms. For example, "Eggs" and "Milk".
- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content Types* (*admin/structure/types*). Click *Manage fields* for your Recipe content type.
- Click *Add field*, and enter values from the table below. Click *Save and continue*.

| Field name      | Explanation                 | Value                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Add a new field | Select the field type       | Reference > Taxonomy term |
| Label           | The title to give the field | Ingredients               |

## Add field ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#)

**Add a new field**

Taxonomy term ▼

or

- Select an existing field - ▼

**Label \***

Ingredients Machine name: field\_ingredients [Edit]

**Save and continue**

8. On the following configuration screen, enter the values from the table below. Click *Save field settings*.

| Field name                | Explanation                                        | Value         |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Type of item to reference | The type of entity that is referenced by the field | Taxonomy term |
| Allowed number of values  | The number of values a user can enter              | Unlimited     |

These settings apply to the *Ingredients* field everywhere it is used. These settings impact the way that data is stored in the database and cannot be changed once data has been created.

**Type of item to reference \***

Taxonomy term ▼

**Allowed number of values**

Unlimited ▼

**Save field settings**

9. On the following configuration screen, enter the values from the table below. Click *Save settings*.

| Field name                        | Explanation                                     | Value                                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Help text                         | Help shown to users creating content            | Enter ingredients that site visitors might want to search for |
| Reference type > Reference method | Select the method used to choose allowed values | Default                                                       |

| Field name                                                              | Explanation                                                               | Value       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Reference type > Available Vocabularies                                 | Select the vocabulary to choose allowed values from                       | Ingredients |
| Reference type > Create referenced entities if they don't already exist | Whether new ingredient terms can be created from the content editing form | Checked     |

**Label \***

Ingredients

**Help text**

Enter ingredients that site visitors might want to search for

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.

Allowed HTML tags: <a> <b> <big> <code> <del> <em> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <span> <strong> <sub> <sup> <tt> <ol> <ul> <li> <p> <br> <img>

This field supports tokens.

☐ Required field

▶ **DEFAULT VALUE**

▼ **REFERENCE TYPE**

**Reference method \***

Default

☒ Create referenced entities if they don't already exist

**Available Vocabularies \***

☒ Ingredients

☐ Tags

[Save settings](#)

[Delete](#)

- Click *Save settings*. You will be taken back to the *Manage Fields* page. A message will be displayed saying that the configuration for Ingredients is complete.

### Manage fields ☆

[Edit](#)
[Manage fields](#)
[Manage form display](#)
[Manage display](#)

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Recipe

✓ Saved *Ingredients* configuration.

+ Add field

| LABEL       | MACHINE NAME      | FIELD TYPE                           | OPERATIONS           |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Body        | body              | Text (formatted, long, with summary) | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Ingredients | field_ingredients | Entity reference                     | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Main image  | field_main_image  | Image                                | <a href="#">Edit</a> |

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Bob Snodgrass](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 6.7. Adding a Reference Field

### Goal

Add a reference field so that recipes can be linked to the vendor that has submitted it.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#)
- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The Recipe and Vendor content types must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). Then click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the Recipe content type. The *Manage fields* page appears.
2. Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save and continue*.

| Field name      | Explanation                          | Value               |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Add a new field | Option to specify the field type     | Reference > Content |
| Label           | The title you want to give the field | Submitted by        |

## Add field ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#)

### Add a new field

Content ▼

or

### Re-use an existing field

- Select an existing field - ▼

### Label \*

Submitted by

Machine name: field\_submitted\_by [Edit]

[Save and continue](#)

3. The page Submitted by appears which lets you set the allowed number of values. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save field settings*.

| Field name                | Explanation                                           | Value                 |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Type of item to reference | Option to select the type of referenced item          | Content               |
| Allowed number of values  | Specify the count of values associated with the field | Limited, <sup>1</sup> |

## Submitted by ☆

[Edit](#)

[Field settings](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#) » [Submitted by](#)

These settings apply to the *Submitted by* field everywhere it is used. These settings impact the way that data is stored in the database and cannot be changed once data has been created.

### Type of item to reference \*

Content ▼

### Allowed number of values

Limited ▼ 1

[Save field settings](#)

4. The page *Submitted by settings for Recipe* appears which allows you to configure the field. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save settings*.

| Field name       | Explanation                                   | Value                                        |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Label            | Title shown for this field on the page        | Submitted by                                 |
| Help text        | Brief text aiding the person creating content | Choose the vendor that submitted this recipe |
| Required field   | Whether a value has to be provided or not     | Checked                                      |
| Reference method | Option to select reference method             | Default                                      |
| Content types    | Specify the content type                      | Vendor                                       |
| Sort by          | Sorting field                                 | Title                                        |
| Sort direction   | Sorting order                                 | Ascending                                    |

#### Help text

Choose the vendor that submitted this recipe

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.

Allowed HTML tags: <a> <b> <big> <code> <del> <em> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <span> <strong> <sub> <sup> <tt> <ol> <ul> <li> <p> <br> <img>  
This field supports tokens.

☒ Required field

#### ▼ DEFAULT VALUE

The default value for this field, used when creating new content.

Submitted by

#### ▼ REFERENCE TYPE

Reference method \*

☐ Create referenced entities if they don't already exist

Content types \*

☐ Basic page

☐ Recipe

☒ Vendor

Sort by

Sort direction \*

[Save settings](#)

[Delete](#)

- The Submitted by field has been added to the content type.

Manage fields ☆

Edit

Manage fields

Manage form display

Manage display

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Recipe

✓ Saved Submitted by configuration.

+ Add field

| LABEL        | MACHINE NAME       | FIELD TYPE                           | OPERATIONS      |
|--------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Body         | body               | Text (formatted, long, with summary) | <div>Edit</div> |
| Ingredients  | field_ingredients  | Entity reference                     | <div>Edit</div> |
| Main image   | field_main_image   | Image                                | <div>Edit</div> |
| Submitted by | field_submitted_by | Entity reference                     | <div>Edit</div> |

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 6.8. Concept: Forms and Widgets

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)

### What are forms and widgets?

The content management system software that your site is running allows administrators to edit content and configure settings online, using various web *forms*. In particular, *content editing forms* are used to edit your site's content, and they are configurable by administrators; settings configuration forms are provided by modules and cannot themselves be configured.

The data in your site's content is stored in one or more fields that are attached to the content type and/or sub-type. When you configure the content editing form for each content sub-type, you can:

- Select a *widget* for each field. A widget defines the method used to enter the data for the field. For example, a taxonomy term can be chosen using an autocomplete field, a select list, or a tags-style field that lets editors add new tags automatically.
- Configure widget settings. For example, you can choose the size of a plain-text entry field.

- Hide one or more fields from the editing form.
- Reorder the fields.

In principle, you can also have multiple content editing forms available for each content sub-type. This feature is rarely used, however; the only exception in common use is for the user profile fields: you can use different forms for user registration and user editing. For example, you might have a limited set of fields shown when users first register on the site, and more fields shown later on when they edit their profiles.

## Related topics

- [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#)
- [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 6.9. Changing Content Entry Forms

### Goal

Change the Recipe form to use a different widget to enter terms in the Ingredients field.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)
- [#### 6.8, "Concept: Forms and Widgets"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The Recipe content type must exist, and it must have an Ingredients taxonomy term reference field. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#) and [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#).



## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Recipe (node/add/recipe)* to look at the content entry form that is set up by default. Notice how you have to enter ingredients one by one, instead of having a more compact format.
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. Then click *Manage form display* on the dropdown button for the Recipe content type. The *Manage form display* page appears.
3. For the Ingredients field, select *Autocomplete (Tags style)* in the *Widget* column.

| FIELD                    | WIDGET                      |                                                                          |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| + Recipe name            | Textfield ▼                 | Textfield size: 60                                                       |
| + Authored by            | Autocomplete ▼              | Autocomplete matching: Contains<br>Textfield size: 60<br>No placeholder  |
| + Authored on            | Datetime Timestamp ▼        |                                                                          |
| + Promoted to front page | Single on/off checkbox ▼    | Use field label: Yes                                                     |
| + Sticky at top of lists | Single on/off checkbox ▼    | Use field label: Yes                                                     |
| + URL alias              | URL alias ▼                 |                                                                          |
| + Body                   | Text area with a summary ▼  | Number of rows: 9<br>Number of summary rows: 3                           |
| + Main image             | Image ▼                     | Preview image style: Thumbnail (100×100)<br>Progress indicator: throbber |
| + Ingredients            | Autocomplete (Tags style) ▼ | Autocomplete matching: Contains<br>Textfield size: 60<br>No placeholder  |
| + Submitted by           | Autocomplete ▼              | Autocomplete matching: Contains<br>Textfield size: 60<br>No placeholder  |
| <b>Disabled</b>          |                             |                                                                          |
| No field is hidden.      |                             |                                                                          |
| <b>Save</b>              |                             |                                                                          |

4. Click **Save**.
5. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Recipe (node/add/recipe)* to verify the changed behavior of the content form. The Ingredients field is now a single text field that accepts multiple values.

**Create Recipe** ☆

Home » Node » Add content

**Recipe name\***

**Body (Edit summary)**

Text format: Basic HTML

**Main image\***

Browse... No file selected.

One file only.  
5 MB limit.  
Allowed types: png gif jpg jpeg.  
Images must be larger than 600x600 pixels.

**Ingredients**

Enter ingredients that site visitors might want to search for

**Submitted by\***

Choose the vendor that submitted this recipe

Save and publish Preview

**Last saved:** Not saved yet

**Author:** admin

☒ Create new revision

**Revision log message**

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

► URL PATH SETTINGS

► AUTHORIZING INFORMATION

► PROMOTION OPTIONS

6. Create two Recipe content items (see [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)), such as recipes for "Green Salad" and "Fresh Carrots". Make sure all the fields have values, including images, ingredients, and submitted by (set this to one of the Vendor content items you created in [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)).

## Expand your understanding

Change the main site Contact form by navigating in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Contact forms*. For instance, you may want to hide the *Send yourself a copy* or *Language* fields.

### Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 6.10. Concept: View Modes and Formatters

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)

### What is a View mode?

How an entity (such as content, a user or a comment) is displayed, depends on the context in which it is shown. This context is known as a *view mode*. Examples of view modes are:

- a full page of the content with all the field values
- a teaser of the content with a thumbnail image and a *Read more* link
- a full user profile with a zoomable portrait photo
- a user avatar with username and a link to the profile

Every view mode can be configured through the administration pages. To see the configuration options for the view modes of the Recipe content type, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)* and click *Manage display* from the dropdown button. In each view mode, all fields can be hidden or displayed, and if they are displayed, you can choose and configure the field formatter.

### What is a field formatter?

A field formatter is a setting for displaying the field values. For example, long text fields can be displayed trimmed or full-length, and taxonomy term reference fields can be displayed in plain text or linked to the taxonomy term page. Consult the *Manage display* page to see the field formatters for the fields of the Recipe content type.

### Related topics

- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)

### Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "View modes"](#)

## Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from "[View modes](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

# 6.11. Changing Content Display

## Goal

Make the content items more readable, accessible, and visibly attractive by reordering the fields, hiding labels, and tuning the output of the fields.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#)

## Site prerequisites

The Vendor content type must exist, it must have Main Image and Vendor URL fields, and your site must have at least one Vendor content item. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

## Steps

1. Find and view a Vendor content item you created in [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#). Notice that there are several things that could be done to improve how the page looks:
  - The Main Image and Vendor URL fields should not have labels.
  - The order of the fields should be changed so that the image comes first.
  - The image should be smaller.
2. To fix the first two problems, and update some additional settings, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). Then click *Manage display* in the dropdown button for the Vendor content type.

**Content types** ☆

Home » Administration » Structure

[+ Add content type](#)

| NAME       | DESCRIPTION                                                                 | OPERATIONS                                                                                                                                               |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Basic page | Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page. | <a href="#">Manage fields</a>                                                                                                                            |
| Recipe     | Recipe submitted by a vendor                                                | <a href="#">Manage fields</a>                                                                                                                            |
| Vendor     | Information about a vendor                                                  | <a href="#">Manage fields</a><br><a href="#">Manage form display</a><br><a href="#">Manage display</a><br><a href="#">Edit</a><br><a href="#">Delete</a> |

3. Under the *Label* column, select *Hidden* for Main image. Do the same for Vendor URL.

[Show row weights](#)

| FIELD               | LABEL      | FORMAT  |                                      |
|---------------------|------------|---------|--------------------------------------|
| ✚ Links             |            | Visible |                                      |
| ✚ Body              | - Hidden - | Default |                                      |
| ✚ Vendor URL        | - Hidden - | Link    | Link text trimmed to 80 characters ⚙ |
| ✚ Main image        | - Hidden - | Image   | Original image ⚙                     |
| <b>Disabled</b>     |            |         |                                      |
| No field is hidden. |            |         |                                      |

4. Click the gear for the Vendor URL field. Clear the *Trim link text length* setting. Links will no longer have a trim length. Check the *Open link in new window* checkbox. Now, when the link is clicked, it will open in a new browser window. Click *Update*.

Format settings: **Link**

**Trim link text length**

characters

Leave blank to allow unlimited link text lengths.

☐ URL only

☐ Show URL as plain text

☐ Add rel="nofollow" to links

☒ Open link in new window

**Update** **Cancel**

5. Drag the cross arrows next to the field items to reorder as Main image, *Body*, Vendor URL, and *Links*.

**\*You have unsaved changes.**

| FIELD               | LABEL      | FORMAT  |                                                    |
|---------------------|------------|---------|----------------------------------------------------|
| ✚ Main image        | - Hidden - | Image   | Original image ⚙                                   |
| ✚ Body              | - Hidden - | Default |                                                    |
| ✚ Vendor URL        | - Hidden - | Link    | Link text not trimmed<br>Open link in new window ⚙ |
| ✚ Links             |            | Visible |                                                    |
| <b>Disabled</b>     |            |         |                                                    |
| No field is hidden. |            |         |                                                    |

6. Click *Save*.

7. Find the Vendor content item from step <sup>1</sup> again, and verify that the updates have been made.
8. Repeat similar steps to manage the display of the Recipe content type fields.

## Expand your understanding

- Make the main image smaller. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Related concepts

[#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Specify how fields are displayed"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Rearrange the order of fields"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "View modes"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Ann Greazel](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

# 6.12. Concept: Image Styles

## Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

## What are image styles?

Image styles allow you to upload a single image but display it in several ways; each display variation, or *image style*, is the result of applying one or more *effects* to the original image.

As an example, you might upload a high-resolution image with a <sup>4:3</sup> aspect ratio, and display it scaled down, square cropped, or black-and-white (or any combination of these effects). The core software provides a way to do this efficiently:



1. Configure an image style with the desired effects on the *Image styles* page (*admin/config/media/image-styles*).
2. The effects will be applied the first time a particular image is requested in that style.
3. The resulting image is saved.
4. The next time that same style is requested, the saved image is retrieved without the need to recalculate the effects.

The core software provides several effects that you can use to define styles; others may be provided by contributed modules.

Visit the *Image styles* page via the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > Image styles* (*admin/config/media/image-styles*) to see the image styles that are defined by default.

## Related topics

- [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#)
- [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), from "[Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

## 6.13. Setting Up an Image Style

### Goal

Add an image style and use it to display images on Vendor pages.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

## Site prerequisites

- Vendor and Recipe content types must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).
- Main image fields must exist for both content types. See [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#).
- Content items must exist for both content types. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > Image styles* (*admin/config/media/image-styles*).
2. Click *Add image style*.
3. Enter the name *Extra medium (300x200)*
4. Click *Create new style*. The page *Edit style Extra medium (300x200)* appears.
5. In the *Effect* table, select *Scale and crop*. Click *Add*.
6. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name | Value |
|------------|-------|
| Width      | 300   |
| Height     | 200   |

7. Click *Add effect*. The image style is saved with the chosen effects.

## Edit style *Extra medium (300x200)* ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Media](#) » [Image styles](#)

✓ The image effect was successfully applied.

### Preview

original (view actual size)



600px

800px

Extra medium (300x200) (view actual size)



200px

300px

### Image style name \*

Extra medium (300x200)

Machine name: extra\_medium\_300x200 [\[Edit\]](#)

[Show row weights](#)

### EFFECT

✚ Scale and crop 300×200

Edit

✚ Select a new effect ▼

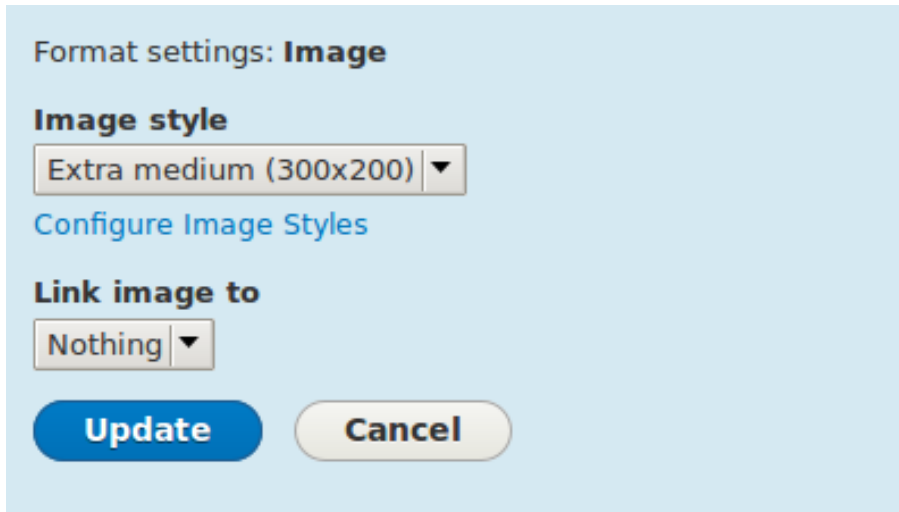
Add

Update style

Delete

8. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*).
9. Click *Manage display* in the *Operations* dropdown for the Vendor content type. The *Manage display* page (*admin/structure/types/manage/vendor/display*) appears.
10. Ensure that the secondary tab *Default* is selected.
11. Click the cogwheel next to *Main image* for the configuration options.
12. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name    | Value                  |
|---------------|------------------------|
| Image style   | Extra medium (300x200) |
| Link image to | Nothing                |



Format settings: **Image**

**Image style**

Extra medium (300x200) ▼

[Configure Image Styles](#)

**Link image to**

Nothing ▼

**Update** **Cancel**

13. Click *Update*.
14. Click *Save*. The new image style will be used while displaying Vendor content.
15. Open a Vendor content item and verify that it now shows up with the scaled-down image. See [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#) for information on how to locate an existing content item.
16. Repeat steps 8-15 for the Recipe content type.

## Related concepts

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) from ["Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 6.14. Concept: Responsive Image Styles

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

### What are responsive image styles?

The core Responsive Image module provides responsive image styles. This allows you to have images in your website that are specifically sized for different screen sizes. This is useful, for example, to make your site load faster on mobile devices because image sizes are optimized for smaller screens.

A responsive image style is a mapping between images styles and breakpoints. Breakpoints are the points where a responsive design needs to change in order to respond to different screen sizes. Responsive image styles can only be used if the breakpoints are defined in the theme.

When a responsive image style is defined, it can be used in the display settings for Image fields. This allows the site to display responsive images using the HTML5 picture tag.

### Related topics

[#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

### Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Responsive web design"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Responsive images in Drupal 8"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with breakpoints in Drupal 8"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from [Responsive images in Drupal 8](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 6.15. **Concept: Text Formats and Editors**

### **What are text formats and filters?**

*Text formats* change how HTML tags and other text are processed and displayed on your site.

Text formats are composed of a series of *filters*, each of which transforms text. When users create content, a text format is associated with the content, and the full, original text is stored in the database. The content is then passed through the filters in the text format before it becomes output on the site.

The core Filter module provides text format functionality, and the core Standard installation profile sets up *Basic HTML*, *Restricted HTML*, and *Full HTML* text formats. Each text format has an associated permission, so that you can allow only trusted users to use permissive text formats. This restricts untrusted users to text formats like *Basic HTML*, which filters out dangerous HTML tags.

### **What are the editors associated with text formats?**

Each text format can be associated with an editor, such as a visual WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get) HTML editor. The core Text Editor module provides the ability to associate editors with text formats, and to configure the editors (such as adding and removing buttons from their toolbars). The core CKEditor module provides the industry-standard editor known as CKEditor, so that it can be used to edit HTML content on your site.

### **What is cross-site scripting?**

Cross-site scripting (XSS) is a security vulnerability typically found in websites. In a site that is not well protected, malicious users can enter script into web pages that are viewed by other users (for example, in a comment or in the body of a page). A cross-site scripting vulnerability may be used by attackers to login as another user. It is important to configure the text formats of your website to prevent such abuse.

### **Related topics**

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

### **Additional resources**

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Filter module: text formats that filter user input"](#)

- [Wikipedia page "Cross-site scripting"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 6.16. Configuring Text Formats and Editors

### Goal

Add a horizontal rule tag to the *Basic HTML* text format, and a corresponding button to its editor configuration.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 6.15, "Concept: Text Formats and Editors"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Filter, Editor, and CKEditor modules must be installed. They are installed on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.
- The *Basic HTML* text format must exist. This is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Content authoring > Text formats and editors* (*admin/config/content/formats*). The *Text formats and editors* page appears.
2. Click *Configure* for the *Basic HTML* text format. The *Basic HTML* page appears.
3. Note that *CKEditor* is selected in the *Text editor* field. This allows you to configure the editor's toolbar.
4. Drag the *horizontal rule* button from *Available buttons* to *Tools* in *Active toolbar*. You may need to click the *Show group names* link to see the *Tools* group name.

**TOOLBAR CONFIGURATION**

Move a button into the *Active toolbar* to enable it, or into the list of *Available buttons* to disable it. Buttons may be moved with the mouse or keyboard arrow keys. Toolbar group names are provided to support screen reader users. Empty toolbar groups will be removed upon save.

**Available buttons**

Styles - U S x<sup>2</sup> x<sub>e</sub> I<sub>x</sub> [List icons] [Text icons] [Media icons] [Tools icons] [Format -] [Table icon] [Table of contents icon]

**Button divider**

[Divider icon]

**Active toolbar**

Formatting: B I Links: [Link icon] [Unlink icon] Lists: [List icon] [List icon] Media: [Image icon] [Image icon] Tools: [Image icon] [Image icon] Add group

Add group

Show group names

5. Note that you can change the *Filter processing order*.
6. In the field *Allowed HTML tags*, add `<hr>` to what is already present.

#### Filter settings

**Limit allowed HTML tags and correct faulty HTML**

Enabled

**Allowed HTML tags**

`<hr> <a href hreflang> <em> <strong> <cite> <blockquote cite> <cc>`

A list of HTML tags that can be used. By default only the *lang* and *dir* attributes are allowed for all HTML tags. Each HTML tag may have attributes which are treated as allowed attribute names for that HTML tag. Each attribute may allow all values, or only allow specific values. Attribute names or values may be written as a prefix and wildcard like *jump-\**. JavaScript event attributes, JavaScript URLs, and CSS are always stripped.

☐ Display basic HTML help in long filter tips

☐ Add rel="nofollow" to all links

7. Click *Save configuration*. You will be taken back to the *Text formats and editors* page. A message will be displayed saying that the text format has been updated.

✓ The text format *Basic HTML* has been updated.

## Expand your understanding

If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

### Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).



---

# ی ربراکی اهاب اسر تیری دم 7. ل صرف

## 7.1. Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions

### What are Users?

Anyone who visits your website is a *user*, including you. There are three groups of users:

- Users who are not logged in, or *anonymous users*
- Users who are logged in, or *authenticated users*
- The administrative user account that was automatically created when you installed your site, or User 1. See [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#).

### What are Permissions?

The ability to do actions on your site (including viewing content, editing content, and changing configuration) is governed by *permissions*. Each permission has a name (such as *View published content*) and covers one action or a small subset of actions. A user must be granted a permission in order to do the corresponding action on the site; permissions are defined by the modules that provide the actions.

### What are Roles?

Rather than assigning individual permissions directly to each user, permissions are grouped into *roles*. You can define one or more roles on your site, and then grant permissions to each role. The permissions granted to authenticated and anonymous users are contained in the *Authenticated user* and *Anonymous user* roles, and depending on the installation profile you used when you installed your site, there may also be an *Administrator* role that is automatically assigned all permissions on your site.

Each user account on your site is automatically given the *Authenticated user* role, and may optionally be assigned one or more additional roles. When you assign a role to a user account, the user will have all the permissions of the role when logged in.

It is a good practice to make several roles on your site. In the farmers market site example, you might want the following roles:

- A Vendor role that allows vendors to edit their own vendor listing page
- A Content editor role for editing the general farmers market pages
- A User manager role for managing the vendor accounts
- The *Administrator* role that was installed with your site, for expert users to manage the site configuration

## Related topics

- [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)
- [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#)
- [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#)
- [#### 7.7, "Assigning Authors to Content"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Users, roles and permissions"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Managing Users"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "User Roles"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Mark LaCroix](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) from "[User Roles](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 7.2. Concept: The User<sup>1</sup> Account

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

## What is the user<sup>1</sup> account?

During the installation of your site, you created the first user account. Each user account internally has a numeric user ID, and since the ID of this user is one, it is commonly referred to as the *user 1* account. This user account is special, because independent of what roles it is assigned, someone logged in as user<sup>1</sup> has permission to do all actions on the site, including viewing and editing all content, editing any user account, changing site configuration, installing and uninstalling modules, and running the update script.

Because of this level of permission, some people refer to this account as the *root user*, similar to the "root" user account that has full administrative permissions in Linux and other operating systems.

It is usually better to make separate accounts for each administrative user, giving them the *Administrator* role, rather than having all administrative users log in using the user 1 account.

There are several reasons for this:

- Some actions and updates on the site are logged, and if everyone uses the same account, it is difficult to know who did them if you have questions.
- The *Administrator* role permissions can be modified to be safer than the full permissions of the user<sup>1</sup> account, so that people do not inadvertently change site features that shouldn't be changed.
- People's responsibilities on a site may change over time. With ordinary user accounts, this can be mirrored in permissions by assigning or unassigning roles to their user accounts. If they are all using the user<sup>1</sup> account, this is more difficult.
- On some sites, the author of content or comments is displayed or tracked, and if everyone uses the same account to create content, it is difficult to know who created the content.

It is not possible to delete the user<sup>1</sup> account from the administrative user interface. It would be possible to do with a database query, but it could cause problems in your site and is not advisable.

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Accounts and roles"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Mark LaCroix](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 7.3. Creating a Role

### Goal

Create a Vendor role to allow some - but not all - users to perform specific tasks.

### Prerequisite knowledge

#### 7.1, ["Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People > Roles* (*admin/people/roles*).
2. You will find default roles *Anonymous user*, *Authenticated user*, and *Administrator* already present.

**Roles** ☆

List Permissions Roles

Home » Administration » People

A role defines a group of users that have certain privileges. These privileges are defined on the [Permissions page](#). Here, you can define the names and the display sort order of the roles on your site. It is recommended to order roles from least permissive (for example, Anonymous user) to most permissive (for example, Administrator user). Users who are not logged in have the Anonymous user role. Users who are logged in have the Authenticated user role, plus any other roles granted to their user account.

+ Add role

Show row weights

| NAME               | OPERATIONS |
|--------------------|------------|
| Anonymous user     | Edit ▼     |
| Authenticated user | Edit ▼     |
| Administrator      | Edit ▼     |

Save

3. Click *Add Role* to add a custom role.
4. Type *Vendor* in the *Role name* field. Click *Save*.

**Add role** ☆

Home » Administration » People » Roles

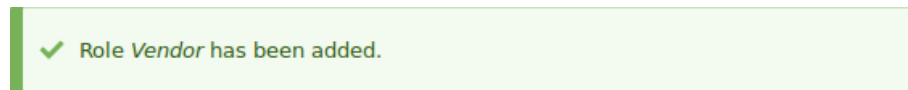
**Role name** \*

Machine name: vendor [Edit]

The name for this role. Example: "Moderator", "Editorial board", "Site architect".

Save

5. You will see the message "Role Vendor has been added." displayed at the top of the page.



## Expand your understanding

- [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "User Roles"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Jack Probst](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Joe Shindelar](#) from ["User Roles"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

## 7.4. Creating a User Account

### Goal

Create Vendor user accounts for Sweet Honey and Happy Farm vendors.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

- [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#)
- [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#)

## Site prerequisites

The Vendor role must exist on your site. See [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#).

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People (admin/people)*.
2. Click *Add user*.

## Add user ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [People](#)

This web page allows administrators to register new users. Users' email addresses and usernames must be unique.

### Email address

A valid email address. All emails from the system will be sent to this address. The email address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by email.

### Username \*

Several special characters are allowed, including space, period (.), hyphen (-), apostrophe ('), underscore (\_), and the @ sign.

### Password \*

Password strength:

### Confirm password \*

Passwords match:

Provide a password for the new account in both fields.

### Status

- ☐ Blocked  
☒ Active

### Roles

- ☒ Authenticated user  
☐ Administrator  
☐ Vendor  
☐ Notify user of new account

### Picture

3. Fill in the form fields. See the table below.

| Field name    | Explanation                                                                                                                                         | Example value                                            |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Email address | A valid email address for the vendor. All emails from the system will be sent to this address. The email address is not made public.                | <a href="mailto:honey@example.com">honey@example.com</a> |
| Username      | A username for the vendor that they will use to sign in or author content items. Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods, | Sweet Honey                                              |

| Field name                 | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                          | Example value            |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
|                            | hyphens, apostrophes, and underscores.                                                                                                                                               |                          |
| Password                   | A password the vendor will use to sign in to the site. You can see how safe the password is on the <i>Password strength</i> gauge.<br><br>You also get tips on how to make it safer. | (Make a secure password) |
| Confirm password           | Type the same password to avoid any typing mistakes.                                                                                                                                 | (Repeat password)        |
| Status                     | Set the status of the user account. <i>Blocked</i> users will not be able to sign in.                                                                                                | Active                   |
| Roles                      | Set the role of the user account.                                                                                                                                                    | Vendor                   |
| Notify user of new account | Whether or not to send a notification to the vendor's email address.                                                                                                                 | Checked                  |
| Picture                    | Click <i>Browse</i> and select a picture to upload. Pay attention to size restrictions.                                                                                              | Photo of the vendor      |
| Contact settings           | Enable or disable the display of a contact form for the account.                                                                                                                     | Checked                  |

- Click *Create new account*. You will get a notification about the user account creation.

✓ The image was resized to fit within the maximum allowed dimensions of 85x85 pixels.  
A welcome message with further instructions has been emailed to the new user *Sweet Honey*.

- Create a second Vendor account for Happy Farm by following the steps above.

## Expand your understanding

Create a user account for yourself.

### Attributions



Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).

## 7.5. Assigning Permissions to a Role

### Goal

Change the permissions for the Vendor role so that users can create, edit, and delete Recipe and Vendor content, format the content, and contact each other.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The Vendor role must exist on your site. See [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People > Roles* (*admin/people/roles*). The *Roles* page appears.
2. Click *Edit permissions* in the dropdown for the Vendor role. The *Edit role* page appears where you can see all the available actions for the website such as, for example, *Post comments* or *Administer blocks*. The available permissions depend on the modules that are installed in the site. Note: Some permissions may have security implications. Be cautious while assigning permissions to roles.
3. Check the boxes for the following permissions, listed by module:

| Module  | Permission                          |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| Contact | Use users' personal contact forms   |
| Filter  | Use the Restricted HTML text format |
| Node    | Recipe: Create new content          |
| Node    | Recipe: Edit own content            |
| Node    | Recipe: Delete own content          |
| Node    | Vendor: Edit own content            |

| Module     | Permission              |
|------------|-------------------------|
| Quick Edit | Access in-place editing |

| PERMISSION                                                                                                                                                        | VENDOR                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Basic page: View revisions</i>                                                                                                                                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Recipe: Create new content</i>                                                                                                                                 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| <i>Recipe: Delete any content</i>                                                                                                                                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Recipe: Delete own content</i>                                                                                                                                 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| <i>Recipe: Delete revisions</i><br>Role requires permission to <i>view revisions</i> and <i>delete rights</i> for nodes in question, or <i>administer nodes</i> . | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Recipe: Edit any content</i>                                                                                                                                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Recipe: Edit own content</i>                                                                                                                                   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| <i>Recipe: Revert revisions</i><br>Role requires permission <i>view revisions</i> and <i>edit rights</i> for nodes in question, or <i>administer nodes</i> .      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Recipe: View revisions</i>                                                                                                                                     | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Vendor: Create new content</i>                                                                                                                                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Vendor: Delete any content</i>                                                                                                                                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Vendor: Delete own content</i>                                                                                                                                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Vendor: Delete revisions</i><br>Role requires permission to <i>view revisions</i> and <i>delete rights</i> for nodes in question, or <i>administer nodes</i> . | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Vendor: Edit any content</i>                                                                                                                                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Vendor: Edit own content</i>                                                                                                                                   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| <i>Vendor: Revert revisions</i><br>Role requires permission <i>view revisions</i> and <i>edit rights</i> for nodes in question, or <i>administer nodes</i> .      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <i>Vendor: View revisions</i>                                                                                                                                     | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| <b>Path</b>                                                                                                                                                       |                                     |

- Click *Save permissions*. You will get a message saying your changes have been saved.

✓ The changes have been saved.

## Expand your understanding

- Log in as one of the new users you created in [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#). Verify whether you have the correct permissions.
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)

## Related concepts

[#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Managing Users"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), [Brian Emery](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), from ["User Roles"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 7.6. Changing a User's Roles

### Goal

Change or add roles to a given user, either by editing a single-user or by applying a bulk operation.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The user account that you want to update, and the role you want it to have, must already exist. See [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#), [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#), and [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#).

## Steps

### Updating the roles using single-user editing method

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People* (*admin/people*).
2. Locate the user 1 account (named "admin") to assign it the *Administrator* role. If it is not immediately visible, use the *Name or email contains* filter, or other filters, to narrow down the list.
3. Click *Edit* to update the user account.

The screenshot shows the 'People' management page. At the top, there are tabs for 'List', 'Permissions', and 'Roles'. Below the tabs, there's a breadcrumb 'Home » Administration' and a '+ Add user' button. A filter section includes 'Name or email contains', 'Role' (set to '- Any -'), 'Permission' (set to '- Any -'), and 'Status' (set to '- Any -'). A 'Filter' button is below these. An 'Action' dropdown is set to 'Add the Administrator role to the selected users', with an 'Apply to selected items' button. Below this is a table of users:

| <input type="checkbox"/> | USERNAME    | STATUS | ROLES           | MEMBER FOR           | LAST ACCESS              | OPERATIONS                          |
|--------------------------|-------------|--------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Happy Farm  | Active | • Vendor        | 5 seconds            | never                    | <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Sweet Honey | Active | • Vendor        | 8 seconds            | never                    | <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | admin       | Active | • Administrator | 11 minutes 6 seconds | 2 minutes 37 seconds ago | <input type="button" value="Edit"/> |

At the bottom of the table, there is another 'Apply to selected items' button.

4. On the *Edit* page, scroll down to *Roles* section. Check the *Administrator* role for the user account.

### Roles

- ☒ Authenticated user
- ☒ Administrator
- ☐ Vendor

5. Click *Save* to update the user account. You should be returned to the *People* page and see a message saying that the changes have been saved.

✓ The changes have been saved.

## Updating the roles using bulk editing method

1. If the users Happy Farm and Sweet Honey did not already have the Vendor role, here is how you would add it. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People (admin/people)*.
2. Locate Vendor user accounts *Sweet Honey* and *Happy Farm* and check them. If they are not immediately visible, use the *Name or email contains* filter, or other filters, to narrow down the list.
3. Select *Add the Vendor role to the selected users* from the *Action* select list.

Action  
Add the Vendor role to the selected users ▼

Apply to selected items

| <input type="checkbox"/>            | USERNAME    | STATUS | ROLES           | MEMBER FOR     | LAST ACCESS    | OPERATIONS           |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|--------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Happy Farm  | Active | • Vendor        | 12 seconds     | never          | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Sweet Honey | Active | • Vendor        | 14 seconds     | never          | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | admin       | Active | • Administrator | 3 days 2 hours | 54 seconds ago | <a href="#">Edit</a> |

Apply to selected items

4. Click *Apply to selected items*. You should see a message indicating that the desired changes were made.

✓ Add the Vendor role to the selected users was applied to 2 items.

## Attributions

Written by [Chris Dart](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#)

## 7.7. Assigning Authors to Content

### Goal

Assign Vendor content items Happy Farm and Sweet Honey to the corresponding Vendor user accounts, so they can edit their own Vendor profiles on the site.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The Vendor content type must exist, and your site must have at least two Vendor content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- User accounts for at least two vendors must exist. See [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content (admin/content)*.
2. Find Vendor content item Happy Farm in the list. If it is not immediately visible, you can filter the list by *Published status*, *Content type* (Vendor), *Title*, or *Language*. Click *Edit* for the Vendor content item you would like to assign an author to.
3. Locate the information block and click *Authoring information*.

**Published**  
**Last saved:** 08/08/2016 - 14:02  
**Author:** Happy Farm  
☒ Create new revision  
**Revision log message**  

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

**▶ URL PATH SETTINGS**

**▼ AUTHORIZING INFORMATION**  
**Authored by**  

Happy Farm (3) ○

The username of the content author.

**Authored on**  

2016-08-0814:00:52

Format: 2016-08-08 14:02:57. Leave blank to use the time of form submission.

**▶ PROMOTION OPTIONS**

4. Start typing the Vendor's user name Happy Farm in the *Authored by* field. The field lists matching user names. Select the Vendor's user name from the list.
5. Click *Save and keep published*.
6. You will get a notification that the Vendor content item has been updated.

✓ Vendor Happy Farm has been updated.

7. Follow these steps again to assign Vendor content item Sweet Honey to the Vendor user account Sweet Honey.

### **Attributions**

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).



---

# اهک ال ب 8. ل صرف

## 8.1. Concept: Blocks

### What is a block?

*Blocks* are individual pieces of your site's web page layout. They are placed inside the regions (see [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#)) of your theme, and can be created, removed, and rearranged in the *Block layout* (*admin/structure/block*) administration page. Examples of blocks include the *Who's online* listing, the main navigation menu, and the breadcrumb trail.

The main page content is also a block.

Some modules make new blocks available for placement on your site. For example, when the core Search module is installed and configured, it provides a block that contains a search form. You may also create and place your own custom blocks.

Each block has its own configuration settings, which allow you to select which pages of your site will display the block. It is even possible to place multiple copies of a block, each with its own separate configuration and visibility rules.

### Related topics

- [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#)
- [#### 8.2, "Creating A Custom Block"](#)
- [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Les Lim](#) from "[Working with blocks \(content in regions\)](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 8.2. Creating A Custom Block

### Goal

Create a block showing the hours and location of the farmers market.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)
- [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ##"](#)

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout > Custom block library* (*admin/structure/block/block-content*).
2. Click *Add custom block*. The *Add custom block* page appears.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name        | Value                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Block description | Hours and location block                                                                                                                     |
| Body              | Open: Sundays, <sup>9</sup> AM to <sup>2</sup> PM, April to September<br>Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown Anytown. |

## Add custom block ☆

[Home](#)

**Block description \***

A brief description of your block.

**Body**

**B** *I*

**Text format** Basic HTML [About text formats ?](#)

**Revision information**

New revision

☒ Create new revision
 

**Revision log message**

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

**Save**

- Click *Save*. A message appears indicating the block has been saved.

## Expand your understanding

- Edit the content of your custom block. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout > Custom block library* (*admin/structure/block/block-content*). Find your block in the list and click *Edit* to make changes.
- Place the block you created in the sidebar. See [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#) for details.

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with blocks \(content in regions\)"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Jacob Redding](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#) from [Working with blocks \(content in regions\)](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 8.3. Placing a Block in a Region

### Goal

Place the Opening hours and location block in the website's sidebar.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Bartik theme must be installed and set as default. See [#### 4.6, "Configuring the Theme"](#).
- The Opening hours and location block must exist. See [#### 8.2, "Creating A Custom Block"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout* (*admin/structure/block*). The *Block layout* page appears, listing the theme's regions.
2. Ensure that in the secondary tab the core Bartik theme is selected. Block placement is defined per theme.
3. Locate the region *Sidebar second* in the list and click *Place block* next to it. The *Place block* window appears, listing all the blocks.


4. Locate the block Opening hours and location and click *Place block* next to it. The *Configure block* window appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name    | Value              |
|---------------|--------------------|
| Title         | Hours and location |
| Display title | Checked            |
| Region        | Sidebar second     |

You can also hide or display the block on specific pages. In the case of the Farmer's market website you do not set any of these configuration options because you want to show the block everywhere.

## Configure block

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Block layout](#) » [Configure block](#)

 Basic block *Hours and location block* has been created.

**Block description:** Hours and location block

**Title \***

Machine name: hours\_location [\[Edit\]](#)

☒ Display title

**Visibility**

**Content types**

Not restricted

**Pages**

Not restricted

**Roles**

Not restricted


**Content types**

☐ Basic page

☐ Recipe

☐ Vendor

**Region**

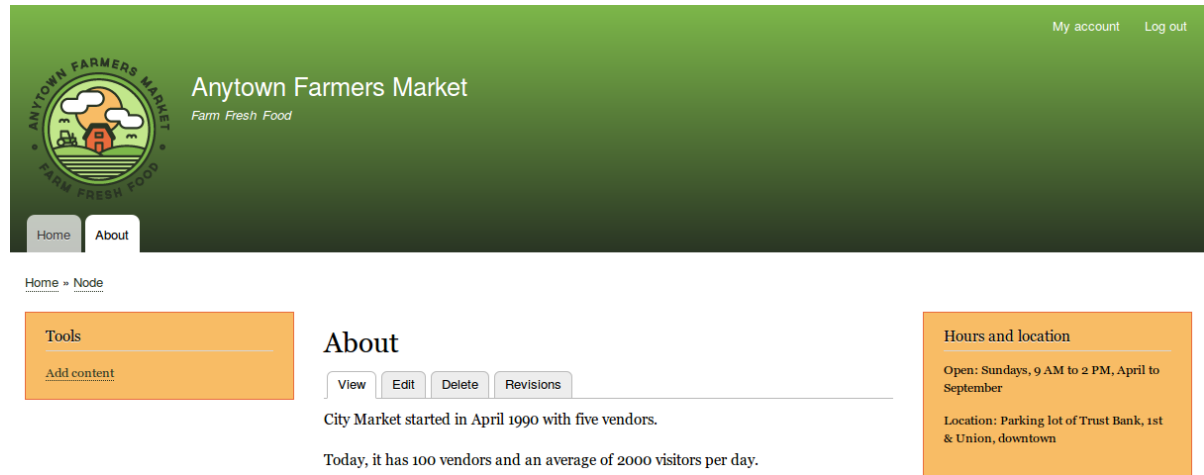


Select the region where this block should be displayed.

**Save block**

5. Click *Save block*. The *Block layout* page appears. You can drag blocks to change the order in which they will appear.
6. Verify that the Opening hours and location block is listed in the *Sidebar second* region, and click *Save blocks*.

The block has been placed on the sidebar of all pages that use the core Bartik theme.



## Expand your understanding

- Remove the *Powered by Drupal* block from the *Footer fifth* region by setting the region to - *None* -.
- Remove the *Tools* block from the *Sidebar first* region by setting the region to - *None* -. This block is only visible to logged-in users.
- Place the *User login* block in a region.
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

---

# زاهدافتسا اب تسرهف داجیا 9. لصف

## Views

### 9.1. Concept: Uses of Views

#### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.4, "#####: ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)

#### What is a view?

A *view* is a listing of content on a website. The core Views module handles the display of views, and the core Views UI module allows you to create and edit them in the administrative interface. When you define views, you are interested in taking data from your website and displaying it to the user.

#### What types of data can be displayed using views?

You can create views to output practically any content entity that is stored in the system. For example, you can create the following lists for the farmers market site:

- Lists of vendors
- Lists of recipes
- Lists of the most recent content on the site
- Lists of users on the site

#### What are the ways data can be output using views?

A listing created by a view can be in any of the following forms:

- Table with sortable fields
- Grid layouts
- Teasers or pictures that link to articles
- Blocks
- JSON output

- RSS feeds
- Calendars
- On-screen slideshows

## Related topics

- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 9.2. Concept: The Parts of a View

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 2.4, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)
- [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)
- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

## What are the parts of a view?

When you are editing a view in the administrative interface, you will see the following parts (or sections), which allow you to specify what data to output, in what order, and in what format:

### Display

Each view can have one or more displays, each of which produces one type of output. Options for display types include:

#### Page

Makes output at a particular URL, for the main page content at that URL.

#### Block

Makes output in a block, which can be placed on pages.



#### Feed

Makes an RSS or another type of feed.

#### Attachment

Makes output that you can attach to another display.

#### Format

Depending on the display type, you can choose to output your data in a table, grid, HTML list, or another format. Some formats also give you a second choice that lets you output either rendered entities or fields; other formats do not give you this choice (for example, if you use a table format, you must always use fields).

#### Fields

Depending on the format choice, you may be able to choose which content fields are output. For example, if you were making a view of recipe content items, in a block display you might show only the recipe names, while in a full page display you might also show an image field because you have more space.

#### Filter criteria

Filters limit the data to be output, based on criteria such as whether the content has been published or not, the type of content, or a field value. For instance, to make a view of recipe content items, you would need to filter to the Recipe content type, and to published recipes. Filters can also be *exposed*, which means that users will have a form where they

can choose their own filter values. You might use this on a Recipe page to let users filter for recipes with certain ingredients.

#### Sort criteria

Defines the order to present the output, which can be based on any content field.

#### Contextual filters

Contextual filters are like regular filters, except that the values come from the *context* of the view display, such as the full URL of the page being displayed, the current date or time, or some other value that can be detected by the view calculation.

#### Relationships

Relationships allow you to expand what is displayed in your view, by relating the base content being displayed to other content entities. Relationships are created using fields on the base content that relate it to the other content; one example is that all regular content items have an author field, which references the user account of the person who authored the content. Once you have created a relationship, you can display fields from the referenced entity in the view.

## Related topics

[#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

#### Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 9.3. Creating a Content List View

### Goal

Create a page listing vendors that will be automatically updated whenever a vendor is added, deleted, or updated on the site.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)
- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Views and Views UI modules must be installed. These are installed for you when you install with the core Standard installation profile.
- The Vendor content type must exist, with URL and Main image fields. Your site must have a couple of Vendor content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The *Medium* (220x220) image style must be defined. This is created on your site when you install the core Image module (installed with the core Standard installation profile) but can be recreated if deleted. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views > Add view (admin/structure/views/add)*. The *Add view* wizard appears.
2. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name | Explanation                                                       | Example value |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| View name  | Name of the view that will be visible in the administration pages | Vendors       |
| Show       | Type of information listed in the view                            | Content       |
| of type    | Specify content type                                              | Vendor        |
| sorted by  | List order                                                        | Title         |

| Field name         | Explanation                                                | Example value   |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Create a page      | Create a page that displays the view                       | Checked         |
| Page title         | Title show above the view                                  | Vendors         |
| Path               | Address of the page                                        | vendors         |
| Display format     | Type of list                                               | Table           |
| Items to display   | Number of items visible on the page                        | 10              |
| Use a pager        | Split up the list in several pages if there are more items | Checked         |
| Create a menu link | Add the view page to the menu                              | Checked         |
| Menu               | Menu in which to add the link                              | Main navigation |
| Link text          | Label of the link in the menu                              | Vendors         |

Add view ☆

Home » Administration » Structure » Views

**VIEW BASIC INFORMATION**

**View name \***

Vendors Machine name: vendors [Edit]

☐ Description

**VIEW SETTINGS**

Show: Content of type: Vendor tagged with:  sorted by: Title

**PAGE SETTINGS**

☒ Create a page

Page title

Vendors

Path

vendors

**PAGE DISPLAY SETTINGS**

Display format:

Table of: teasers

Items to display

10

- Click *Save and edit*. The view configuration page appears.
- Click *Add* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Add fields* pop-up appears.

5. Enter the word "image" in the search field.
6. Check Main image in the table.
7. Click *Apply*. The *Configure field: Content: Main Image* pop-up appears.
8. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name     | Explanation                        | Example value    |
|----------------|------------------------------------|------------------|
| Create a label | Add a label before the field value | Unchecked        |
| Image style    | The format of the image            | Medium (220x220) |
| Link image to  | Add a link to the content item     | Content          |

9. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
10. Click *Add* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Add fields* pop-up appears.
11. Enter the word "body" in the search field.
12. Select *Body* in the table.
13. Click *Apply*. The *Configure field: Content: Body* pop-up appears.
14. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name     | Explanation                            | Example value      |
|----------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Create a label | Add a label before the field value     | Unchecked          |
| Formatter      | The presentation of the field value    | Summary or trimmed |
| Trimmed limit: | The number of maximum characters shown | 120                |

15. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
16. Click *Content: Title (Title)* in the *Fields* list. The *Configure field: Content: Title* pop-up appears.
17. Uncheck *Create a label*. This will remove the label that was created by the wizard.
18. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
19. Click *Rearrange* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Rearrange fields* pop-up appears.
20. Drag the fields into the right order: Image, Title. Body.

21. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
22. Optionally, click *Update preview* for a preview.
23. Click *Save*.

### Vendors (Content) ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Views](#) » [Vendors](#) » [Edit](#)

✓ The view *Vendors* has been saved.

#### Displays

Page [+ Add](#)
Edit view name/description ▼

Display name: [Page](#)
View Page ▼

**TITLE**  
Title: [Vendors](#)

**FORMAT**  
Format: [Table](#) | [Settings](#)

**FIELDS** Add ▼  
 Content: [Main image](#)  
 Content: [Title](#)  
 Content: [Body](#)

**FILTER CRITERIA** Add ▼  
 Content: [Publishing status \(= Yes\)](#)  
 Content: [Content type \(= Vendor\)](#)

**SORT CRITERIA** Add ▼  
 Content: [Title \(asc\)](#)

**PAGE SETTINGS**

Path: [/vendors](#)

Menu: [Normal: Vendors](#)

Access: [Permission](#) | [View published content](#)

**HEADER** Add

**FOOTER** Add

**NO RESULTS BEHAVIOR** Add

**PAGER**

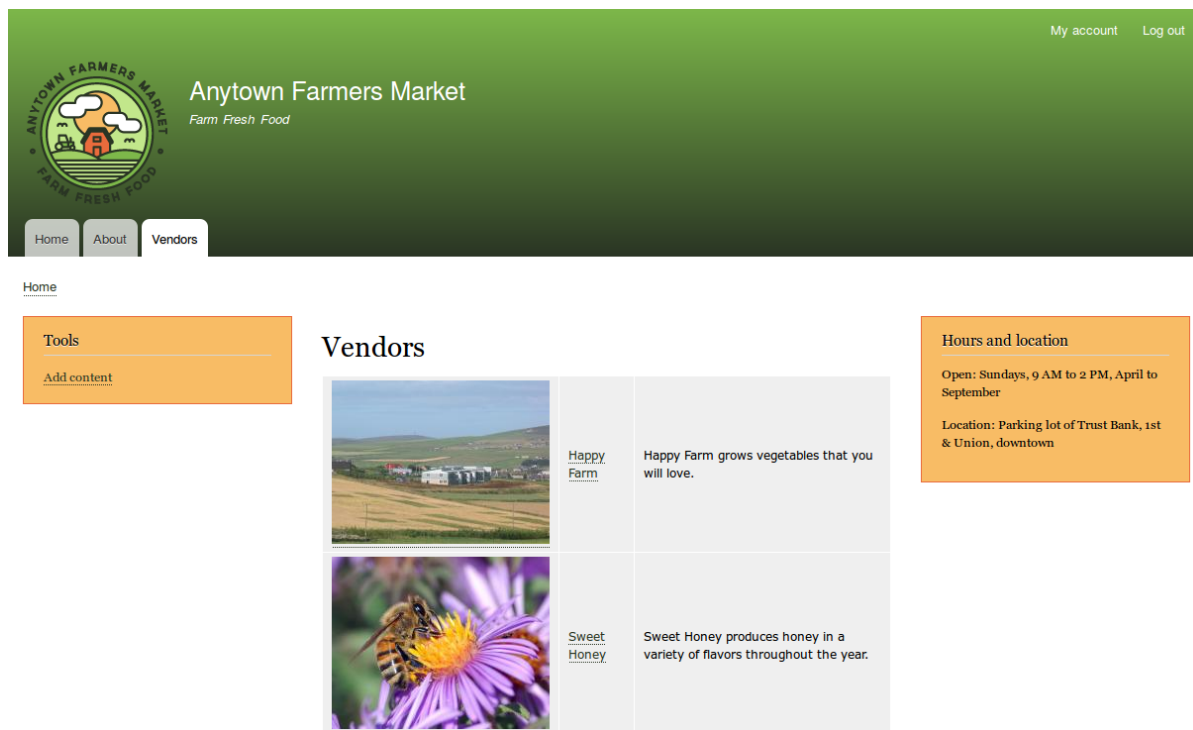
Use pager: [Mini](#) | [Mini pager, 10 items](#)

More link: [No](#)

**ADVANCED**

[Save](#)
[Cancel](#)

24. Navigate to the homepage and click *Vendors* from the main navigation to see the result.



## Expand your understanding

The link to the view in the main navigation will probably not be in the right place. Change the order of the menu items in the main navigation. See [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#).

### Attributions

Written/edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 9.4. Duplicating a View

### Goal

Create a page listing recipes by duplicating the existing Vendors view. Modify the page so that the recipes are displayed in a grid and can be filtered by ingredients.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)

- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

## Site prerequisites

- The Vendor and Recipe content types must exist; both must have Main image fields, and the Recipe content type must have an Ingredients field. Your site must also have a couple of Recipe content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#), [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The Vendors view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#).

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views* (*admin/structure/views*). Find the view "Vendors" and click *Duplicate* in its dropdown button.

**Views** ☆

List Settings

Home » Administration » Structure

+ Add view

Filter by view name or description

**Enabled**

| VIEW NAME                                                                          | DESCRIPTION                                                                                   | TAG     | PATH                                   | OPERATIONS                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>Taxonomy term</b><br>Displays: <i>Feed, Page</i><br>Machine name: taxonomy_term | Content belonging to a certain taxonomy term.                                                 | default | /taxonomy/term/%feed, /taxonomy/term/% | Edit                             |
| <b>Vendors</b><br>Displays: <i>Page</i><br>Machine name: vendors                   |                                                                                               |         | /vendors                               | Edit, Duplicate, Disable, Delete |
| <b>Who's new</b><br>Displays: <i>Block</i><br>Machine name: who_s_new              | Shows a list of the newest user accounts on the site.                                         | default |                                        | Edit                             |
| <b>Who's online block</b><br>Displays: <i>Block</i><br>Machine name: who_s_online  | Shows the user names of the most recently active users, and the total number of active users. | default |                                        | Edit                             |

2. Name the duplicate "Recipes" and click *Duplicate*. The view configuration page appears.

3. Change the title of the view page to "Recipes" by clicking *Vendors* in the *Title* section. The *Page: The title of this view pop-up* appears. Type in "Recipes". Click *Apply*.

**Title**

Recipes

This title will be displayed with the view, wherever titles are normally displayed; i.e, as the page title, block title, etc.

**Apply** **Cancel**

4. Change from a table to a grid format by clicking *Table* in the *Format* section. The *Page: How should this view be styled* pop-up appears. Check *Grid* and click *Apply*. The *Page: Style options* pop-up appears. Retain the default values and click *Apply*.
5. Retain only the title and image fields for the Recipes view by clicking *Content: Body* in the *Fields* section. Click *Remove* in the pop-up that appears.
6. Change the content type filter to use the Recipe content type by clicking *Content: Type (=Vendor)* in the *Filter criteria* section. In the *Configure filter criterion: Content: Type* pop-up, check *Recipe* and uncheck *Vendor*. Click *Apply*.
7. Add a further filter that is exposed to visitors by clicking *Add* in the *Filter criteria* section. Search for "ingredients" and check "Ingredients (field\_ingredients)". Click *Add and configure filter criteria*.
8. The appearing pop-up offers extra settings on vocabulary and selection type. Click *Apply and continue*. The next pop-up allows you to expose this filter to visitors. Fill in the fields as shown below, and click *Apply*.

| Field name                                                 | Explanation                                  | Example value         |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Expose this filter to visitors, to allow them to change it | Allow visitors to filter and search          | Checked               |
| Required                                                   | Whether a value has to be provided or not    | Unchecked             |
| Label                                                      | Label shown for this filter on the view page | Find recipes using... |



Appears in: recipe.

☒ Expose this filter to visitors, to allow them to change it

**Filter type to expose**

☒ Single filter

☐ Grouped filters

Grouped filters allow a choice between predefined operator|value pairs.

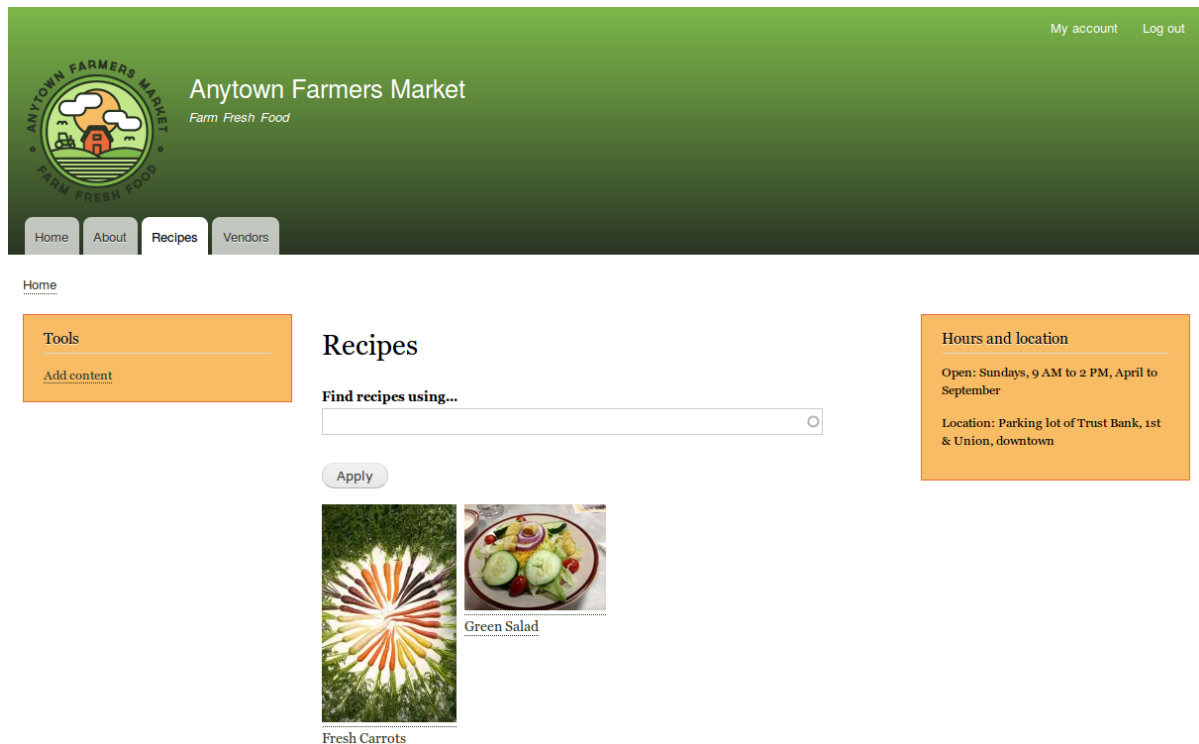
☐ Required

**Label**

Find recipes using...

**Description**

9. Change the *Path* label field to "Recipes" by clicking "/vendors" in the *Page settings* section. In the pop-up that appears, enter the path "recipes" and click *Apply*.  
  
Note that when editing a view, you enter paths without the leading "/", unlike on other administrative pages (such as when providing a path to a content item page).
10. Change the menu link title by clicking "Normal: Vendors" in the *Page settings* section. In the pop-up that appears, change the title to "Recipes" and click *Apply*.
11. In order to use Ajax (see [Ajax entry in the Glossary](#)) to make filtering and paging faster for users, click *Advanced* to expand the section for more options. In the *Other* section, change *Use AJAX: No* to "Yes" by clicking *No* and checking *Use AJAX* in the pop-up that appears. Click *Apply*.
12. Click *Save* to save the view.
13. Go back to the home page and click Recipes in the navigation to view the new Recipes page.



## Expand your understanding

The link to the view in the main navigation will probably not be in the right place. Change the order of the menu items in the main navigation. See [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#).

## Related concepts

- [#### 2.5, "##### #####"](#)
- [Ajax entry in the Glossary](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 9.5. Adding a Block Display to a View

### Goal

Add a block display to the Recipes view to display the most recent recipes in a sidebar, and change its configuration without changing the existing Recipes page view.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)
- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

### Site prerequisites

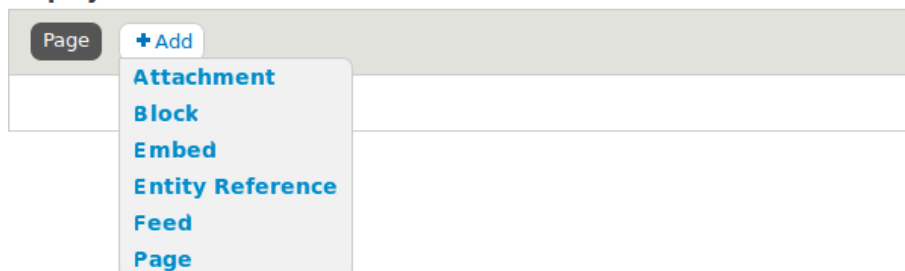
- The Recipe content type must exist, it must have a Main image field, and your site must have a couple of Recipe content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The *Thumbnail (100x100)* image style must be defined. This is created on your site when you install the core Image module (installed with the core Standard installation profile) but can be recreated if deleted. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).
- The Recipes view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) and [#### 9.4, "Duplicating a View"](#).

### Steps

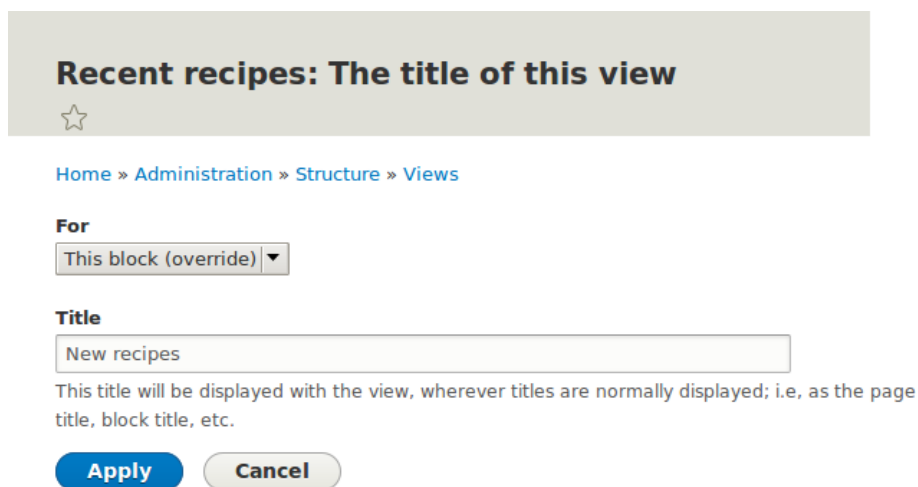
1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views* (*admin/structure/views*). Find the view "Recipes" and click *Edit* from its dropdown button. Alternatively, navigate to the Recipes page in the main site navigation, and click the *Edit view* contextual link in the main area of the page. See [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for information about contextual links.

2. Create a new block display by clicking *Add* in the *Displays* section. Click *Block* from the dropdown button. The new display is created, and the focus is automatically switched to its configuration.

#### Displays



3. Change the title of this display by clicking *Block* next to *Display name*. The *Block: The name and the description of this display* pop-up appears. Change the *Administrative name* to "Recent recipes". Click *Apply*.
4. Change the title of the view by clicking *Title: Recipes* in the *Title* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Change the title to "New recipes" and click *Apply (this display)*.



5. Change the view's style by clicking *Format: Grid* in the *Format* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Select *Unformatted list* and Click *Apply (this display)*. You can further configure the style options in the next pop-up that appears. Then click *Apply*.

6. Configure the image field by clicking *Content: Main image* in the *Fields* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Select *Image style Thumbnail (100x100)*. Click *Apply (this display)*.

## Configure field: Content: Main image



[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Views](#)

### For

This block (override) ▼

Appears in: vendor, recipe.

☐ Create a label

### Label

☐ Place a colon after the label

☐ Exclude from display

Enable to load this field as hidden. Often used to group fields, or to use as token in another field.

### Column used for click sorting

target\_id ▼

Used by Style: Table to determine the actual column to click sort the field on. The default is usually fine.

### Formatter

Image ▼

### Image style

Thumbnail (100×100) ▼

[Configure Image Styles](#)

### Link image to

Content ▼

### STYLE SETTINGS

### REWRITE RESULTS

7. Remove ingredients as a filter by clicking *Content: Ingredients (exposed)* in the *Filter criteria* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Click *Remove* at the bottom.
8. Configure how you want the content to be sorted in the view by clicking *Add* in the *Sort criteria* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Check the field *Authored on* (from Content category), and then *Add and configure sort criteria*.
9. In the appearing configuration pop-up, select *Sort descending* to have the most recent recipes appear first. Click *Apply*.
10. Specify the number of items to be displayed by clicking *Use pager: Mini* in the *Pager* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Under *Pager*, select *Display a specified number of items*. Click *Apply (this display)*. In the *Block: Pager options* pop-up, provide "5" as the value for *Items to display*. Click *Apply*.
11. Click *Save*. You will either see the view editing page again, or the Recipes page, depending on what you did in step <sup>1</sup>. You should also see a message saying that the view has been saved.

✓ The view *Recipes* has been saved.

12. Place the "Recipes: Recent Recipes" block in the *Sidebar second* region. See [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#). Navigate to the site's home page to see the block.



## Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).



---

# دوختیاس ندرک ه نابزدنچ 10. ل صرف

## 10.1. Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # #####"](#)

### What can be translated on your site?

The base language for the software that your site runs (core software, modules, and theme) is English. However, you can create either a site that displays in a different language or a multilingual site; if you do so, all relevant text, images, and file attachments should be shown in the appropriate language for each site visitor. You need to have the core Language module installed in order to use a language other than English on the site.

There are three types of information that you can translate, each with its own method for translating:

#### User interface text

Built-in text present in the core software, modules, and themes. This can be translated from the base English language of the software into the language(s) of your site. Typically, rather than needing to translate this text yourself, you can download translations. You need to have the core Interface Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

#### Configuration text

Text whose structure and initial values are defined by the core software, modules, and theme, but that you can edit. Examples include the labels for fields in your content types, header text in views, your site name, and the content of automatic email messages that your site sends out. After creating configuration text in the default language of your site, you can translate it into other languages. You need to have the core Configuration Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

#### Content text and files

If your site is multilingual, you can configure the content fields on your site to be translatable. After creating content in one language, you can translate it into other languages. Fields can contain textual information or uploaded files, and for each field on

each content type, you can configure it to be translatable or non-translatable. You need to have the core Content Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

## Related topics

- [#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"](#)
- [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)
- [#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 10.2. Adding a Language

### Goal

Add one or more languages to your site and define which one is used by default.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

### Steps

1. Install the four core multilingual modules (Language, Interface Translation, Content Translation, and Configuration Translation), by following the steps in [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Languages* (*admin/config/regional/language*).
3. Click *Add language*.

4. Select *Spanish* (or your preferred language) from the *Language name* select list. Click *Add language*. After waiting for translations to finish downloading, you will be returned to the *Languages* page, with a confirmation message and the new language shown.

## Languages

[List](#)
[Detection and selection](#)

Home » Administration » Configuration » Regional and language

✓ The language *Spanish* has been created and can now be used.

Use one of the language switcher blocks to allow site visitors to switch between languages. You can enable these blocks on the [block administration page](#).

One translation file imported. 8057 translations were added, 0 translations were updated and 0 translations were removed.

Reorder the configured languages to set their order in the language switcher block and, when editing content, in the list of selectable languages. This ordering does not impact [detection and selection](#).

The site default language can also be set. It is not recommended to change the default language on a working site. [Configure the Selected language](#) setting on the detection and selection page to change the fallback language for language selection.

Interface translations are automatically imported when a language is added, or when new modules or themes are enabled. The report [Available translation updates](#) shows the status. Interface text can be customized in the [user interface translation](#) page.

[+ Add language](#)

| NAME    | DEFAULT                          | INTERFACE TRANSLATION | OPERATIONS           |
|---------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| English | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | not applicable        | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Spanish | <input type="radio"/>            | 8057/8059 (99.98%)    | <a href="#">Edit</a> |

[Save configuration](#)

[Show row weights](#)

5. Follow the steps in [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#) to place the *Language switcher* block in the *Sidebar second* region. This will enable site visitors to switch between languages, once the site has been translated.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org page "Resource Guide: Configuring a Multilingual Site"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Leila Tite](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 10.3. Configuring Content Translation

### Goal

Make *Custom block*, *Custom menu link*, and *Content* entity types translatable. Select specific subtypes and set which fields of these can be translated.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, “#####: ##### # ##### #####”](#)
- [#### 10.1, “Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation”](#)

### Site prerequisites

The core Content Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, “Adding a Language”](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Content language and translation (admin/config/regional/content-language)*.
2. Under *Custom language settings*, check *Content*, *Custom block* and *Custom menu link* to make these entity types translatable.

## Custom language settings

- ☐ Comment
- ☐ Contact message
- ☒ Content
- ☒ Custom block
- ☒ Custom menu link
- ☐ File
- ☐ Shortcut link
- ☐ Taxonomy term
- ☐ User

**Save configuration**

3. Configuration options appear for *Content*, *Custom block* and *Custom menu link*. Choose the subtypes you want to translate for each entity type. Check *Basic page* for *Content*, *Basic block* for *Custom block* and *Custom menu link* for *Custom menu link*.
4. Verify the settings for the entity types as shown below:

| Field name                                      | Explanation                                                                             | Example value                     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Default language                                | The default language for the entity subtype                                             | Site's default language (English) |
| Show language selector on create and edit pages | Whether or not the language selector should be shown while editing and creating content | Checked                           |

**Default language**

☒ Basic block

Site's default language (English) ▼

Explanation of the language options is found on the [languages list page](#).

☒ Show language selector on create and edit pages

5. Choose the fields that should be translatable for *Basic page* as shown in the table below.

If a field is not translation-dependent, leave it unchecked. Enabling translation for fields that are numbers or dates has use for accountability or implementing workflows.

| Field name             | Explanation                                                       | Example value |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Title                  | The title of the content                                          | Checked       |
| Authored by            | The author                                                        | Unchecked     |
| Publishing status      | Whether the content has been published or not                     | Checked       |
| Authored on            | Date of publishing                                                | Unchecked     |
| Changed                | Date of last update                                               | Unchecked     |
| Promoted to front page | Whether the content will be included in some content views        | Unchecked     |
| Sticky at top of lists | Whether the content will be displayed first in some content views | Unchecked     |
| URL alias              | Nicer URL for the content                                         | Checked       |
| Body                   | The main content of the page                                      | Checked       |

☒ Title

☐ Authored by

☒ Publishing status

☐ Authored on

☐ Changed

☐ Promoted to front page

☐ Sticky at top of lists

☒ URL alias

☒ Body

6. Similarly, check the appropriate boxes for translatable fields belonging to *Basic block* and *Custom menu link*.
7. Click *Save configuration*.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Blog post "Multilingual Drupal 8 tidbits, part 5"](#)
- [Blog post "Multilingual Drupal 8 tidbits, part 17"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

# 10.4. Translating Content

## Goal

Translate the home page to Spanish.

## Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

## Site prerequisites

- The Home content item must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

- The core Content Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"](#).
- The *Basic page* content type must be configured to be translatable. See [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#).

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content (admin/content)*.
2. Locate the home page. You can search for it by entering "Home" in the title field.
3. Select *Translate* from the dropdown button in the row of the Home content item. The page *Translations of Home* appears.
4. Click *Add* in the row *Spanish*.

**Translations of Home** ☆

View Edit Delete Revisions Translate

Home > Node

| LANGUAGE                    | TRANSLATION          | SOURCE LANGUAGE | STATUS         | OPERATIONS           |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| English (Original language) | <a href="#">Home</a> | n/a             | Published      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Spanish                     | n/a                  | n/a             | Not translated | <a href="#">Add</a>  |

5. Note that the user interface has switched to Spanish. To switch it back to English, remove the first instance of *es* in the browser's URL. For example, if your URL looks like *example.com/es/node/5/translations/add/en/es*, remove the *es* that comes immediately after *example.com*.
6. Fill in the fields as shown below. You will have to click and expand *URL path settings* on the right to provide the value for *URL alias*.

| Field name | Explanation                  | Value                                                                                                  |
|------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Title      | Translated title of the page | Página principal                                                                                       |
| Body       | Translated body of the page  | Bienvenido al mercado de la ciudad - ¡el mercado de agricultores de tu barrio!<br>Horario: Domingos de |



| Field name                    | Explanation                       | Value                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                               |                                   | 9:00 a 14:00. Desde Abril a Septiembre Lugar: parking del Banco Trust número 1. En el centro de la ciudad |
| URL path settings > URL alias | Translated address of the webpage | pagina-principal                                                                                          |

7. Click *Save and keep published (this translation)*.
8. Go to your site's home page to view the newly translated page.

## Expand your understanding

- Follow the steps above to translate more content on your site.
- [#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 10.5. Translating Configuration

### Goal

Translate the labels on the Recipes view page into Spanish.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Configuration Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"](#).
- The Recipes view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) and [#### 9.4, "Duplicating a View"](#).

## Steps

The basic steps for translating any configuration on your site are:

1. Locate the page where the configuration you want to translate is created or edited in the site's primary language. For example, to translate the site name, you need to find the page where you would edit the site name (see [#### 4.2, "Editing Basic Site Information"](#)).
2. Find a link, tab, or button on the page that says "Translate" or something similar. Click this link, tab, or button.
3. Find a button that will let you add a translation in the desired language, and click this button.
4. Enter the translation in the form, and save.

Most configuration is fairly straightforward and intuitive to edit in this manner. Views configuration is an exception, because the translation editing form is nothing like the view editing form, and it is complex and hierarchical rather than being a simple form with just a few fields. As an example of how to translate a view, here are the steps to translate the labels in the Recipes view to Spanish:

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views (admin/structure/views)*.
2. Locate the Recipes view and click *Translate* from the dropdown button.
3. Click *Add* in the row *Spanish*. The page *Add Spanish translation for Recipes view* appears.
4. Find *Displays > Master Display settings > Recipes default display Options*. Translate the *Display title* from "Recipes" to "Recetas".
5. Find *Displays > Master display settings > Recipes default display options > Exposed form > Reset options*. Translate *Submit button text (Apply)* to "Aplicar". The other buttons and labels in this section do not appear on the Recipes page or block, and do not need to be translated.

### Add Spanish translation for *Recipes* view ☆

Home » Administration » Structure » Views » Recipes » Translate

|                                              |                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Label</b><br>Recipes                      | <b>Label</b><br><input type="text" value="Recipes"/>      |
| <b>Administrative description</b><br>(Empty) | <b>Administrative description</b><br><input type="text"/> |

DISPLAYS

MASTER DISPLAY SETTINGS

Title

Master

RECIPES DEFAULT DISPLAY OPTIONS

EXPOSED FORM

RESET OPTIONS

Submit button text

Apply

Reset button label

Reset

Exposed sorts label

Sort by

- Find *Displays > Master display settings > Recipes default display options > Filters > (Empty) taxonomy term ID > Find recipes using... Expose*. In the *Label* field, enter "Encontrar recetas usando...".
- Click *Save translation*.
- Navigate to the Recipes page and switch to Spanish using the Language switcher block. Verify that the labels have been translated.

## Expand your understanding

- Translate the block display title in the Recent recipes display settings section of the Recipes view.
- Translate the page title in the Vendors view.
- Translate other configuration. Some examples of where to find the translation pages:
  - To translate the site name, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Configuration > System > Basic site settings > Translate system information (admin/config/system/site-information/translate)*.

- To translate the contact form, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Contact forms (admin/structure/contact)*. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button in the *Website feedback* row.
- To translate the name of a menu, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Menus (admin/structure/menu)*. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the menu whose name you want to translate.
- Menu items within a menu are considered to be content (not configuration); see [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#) to enable translation. Once translation is enabled, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Menus (admin/structure/menu)*. Click *Edit menu* in the dropdown button for the menu whose links you want to translate. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the link you want to translate.
- To translate field labels on a content type, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. Click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the content type whose field labels you want to edit. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the field whose label you want to edit.
- Translate content. See [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

---

# تیاس یزاسای شرافس و هعسوت 11. لصف دوخ

## 11.1. Finding Modules

### Goal

Find and evaluate modules on *Drupal.org*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

### Steps

1. Go to [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org/), and navigate to *Download & Extend > Modules* ([https://www.drupal.org/project/project\\_module](https://www.drupal.org/project/project_module)).
2. Filter your search using the categories on the module search page. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name         | Explanation                                                     | Example value       |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Maintenance status | How actively should the module be maintained?                   | Actively maintained |
| Development status | What kind of development should the module undergo?             | Any                 |
| Module categories  | The module's topic area.                                        | Administration      |
| Core compatibility | The version of the core software the module is compatible with. | 8.x                 |
| Status             | Project status: <i>Sandbox projects</i> are experimental        | Full projects       |

| Field name     | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                        | Example value  |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
|                | projects. <i>Full projects</i> have already gone through an approval process, but they can still be in development.                                                                |                |
| Search Modules | Search for <i>Admin Toolbar</i> , a module that will be covered in detail later. Alternatively, you can also leave the field blank if you are not sure which module to search for. | Admin Toolbar  |
| Sort by        | Order your search results by criteria like <i>Most installed</i> (popular modules that many sites use) or <i>Last release</i> (date of latest version released).                   | Most installed |

**46 Modules match your search**

Maintenance status

Development status

Module categories

Core compatibility

Status

Stability

Search Modules

Sort by

- Click *Search*. Search results will appear.

## Admin Toolbar

Posted by [eme](#) on 20 April 2015

### What is Admin Toolbar module ?

Admin Toolbar intends to improve the default Drupal Toolbar (the administration menu at the top of your site) to transform it into a drop-down menu, providing a fast access to all administration pages.

The module works on the top of the default toolbar core module and is therefore a very light module and keeps all the toolbar functionalities (shortcut / media responsive).

### How to use Admin Toolbar module ?

Just install it like any other module.

[Read more](#) · Categories: [Actively maintained](#) , [Under active development](#) , [Administration](#)

## Adminimal Admin Toolbar (Drupal 8)

Posted by [energee](#) on 19 March 2016

This module is inspired by [Adminimal Administration Menu](#). It provides a minimalist style to [Admin Toolbar](#) for Drupal 8.

Although the "Adminimal" theme provides menu styling, there are some conflicts with Admin toolbar and styling will only be present when the admin theme is set like when editing content.

[Read more](#) · Categories: [Actively maintained](#) , [Under active development](#) , [Administration](#) , [Theme Enhancements](#)

## Toolbar Themes

Posted by [Jeff Burnz](#) on 13 September 2016

Provides themes for the Drupal 8 Toolbar module. The main purpose of this module is to provide compact, minimal themes for the Toolbar and allow the site admin to show or hide tabs and icons.

### Installation

Install like all other modules, then go to: `~/admin/config/toolbar-themes/settings`

[Read more](#) · Categories: [Actively maintained](#) , [Under active development](#) , [Administration](#)

4. To further evaluate a module, click its title in the list of search results to visit its project page.

Some aspects to pay attention to when evaluating modules:

- Project description: The description of the module on its project page should be clear and useful. You should get an idea of its features and requirements.
- Maintenance status: If a module is *Actively maintained*, you can be sure that there will be security updates, bug fixes and feature improvements provided on a regular basis. However, if the module is unmaintained or abandoned, you shouldn't use it.

- Development status: *Under active development* means you can expect new features to be added to the project, but some aspects (for example, API) may still change. *Maintenance fixes only* means that the project is considered feature complete.
- Reported installs, downloads: You can see how many people have downloaded and how many sites use the module. If it's only used by a few sites, it might be a unique solution that not many people need, or it might be a warning sign that you shouldn't use it either.
- Maintainers: When was the last commit (the last time someone updated something on the module) or last release (new version)? If the project has few open issues, a long time since commits/releases might be appropriate, but if it has a lot of open issues and there are no commits/releases, that would be a clue that it might be abandoned.
- Issues: See if there are any open issues, potential problems with the module. Check the *Statistics* to see how regularly issues are responded to.
- Resources: Check if the module has documentation or a README file, that can help you install, configure, explore, and test it.



## Admin Toolbar

[View](#) [Version control](#) [Automated Testing](#)

Posted by [eme](#) on April 20, 2015 at 2:28pm

Admin Toolbar

### What is Admin Toolbar module ?

Admin Toolbar intends to improve the default Drupal Toolbar (the administration menu at the top of your site) to transform it into a drop-down menu, providing a fast access to all administration pages.

The module works on the top of the default toolbar core module and is therefore a very light module and keeps all the toolbar functionalities (shortcut / media responsive).

### How to use Admin Toolbar module ?

Just install it like any other module.

### What more?

The module provides also a submodule called "Admin Toolbar Extra Tools" adding extra links like what does Admin Menu module for Drupal 7 (flush caches, run CRON, etc...).

Please provide feedback and ideas!

### Complementary modules :

[Toolbar Menu](#) allows you to add easily any menu to your toolbar and plays nicely with Admin toolbar making them dropdown menus.  
[Toolbar Anti-flicker](#) removes the impact of the admin toolbar sub-menu on the rest of the page.  
[Coffee](#) is a good module to look for admin paths.  
[Adminimal Admin toolbar](#) provides a black theming, recommended for the [Adminimal theme](#).

### Supporting organizations:

[emerya](#)

### Project Information

Maintenance status: [Actively maintained](#)  
Development status: [Under active development](#)  
Module categories: [Administration](#)  
Reported installs: **14,813** sites currently report using this module. [View usage statistics](#).  
Downloads: 81,993  
Automated tests: Enabled  
Last modified: August 9, 2016  
shield [Stable releases receive coverage](#) from the [Drupal Security Team](#).  
Look for the shield icon below.

### Maintainers for Admin Toolbar

[romainj](#) - 29 commits  
last: 5 days ago, first: 4 months ago  
[eme](#) - 11 commits  
last: 3 weeks ago, first: 8 months ago  
[matio89](#) - 23 commits  
last: 2 months ago, first: 1 year ago  
[View all committers](#)  
[View commits](#)

### Issues for Admin Toolbar

To avoid duplicates, please search before submitting a new issue.

[Search](#)

[Advanced search](#)

#### All issues

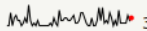
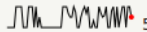
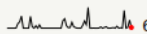
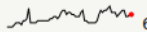

15 open, 138 total

#### Bug report

6 open, 78 total

[Subscribe via e-mail](#)

#### Statistics

New issues  3  
Response rate  50 %  
1st response  6 hours  
Open bugs  6  
Participants  7  
2 year graph, updates weekly

### Resources

[Read license](#)

## Expand your understanding

#### [11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).

## 11.2. Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode

### Goal

Put your site in maintenance mode to allow users with the right permissions to use the site while users without this permission are presented with a message that the site is under maintenance.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

### Steps

#### Enabling maintenance mode

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Maintenance mode* (*admin/config/development/maintenance*). The *Maintenance mode* page appears.
2. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name                                  | Explanation                                                                                                                    | Value                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Put site into maintenance mode              | Enable the maintenance mode                                                                                                    | Checked                                                                                       |
| Message to display when in maintenance mode | The information that is shown to website visitors when the mode is enabled. Variables such as @site can be used in the message | @site is currently under maintenance but should be back shortly. Thank you for your patience. |

3. Click *Save configuration*.
4. Verify that the site is in maintenance mode by accessing it from another browser where you aren't logged in. If you are not able to verify, try clearing the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

**Anytown Farmers Market**  
Farm Fresh Food

### Site under maintenance

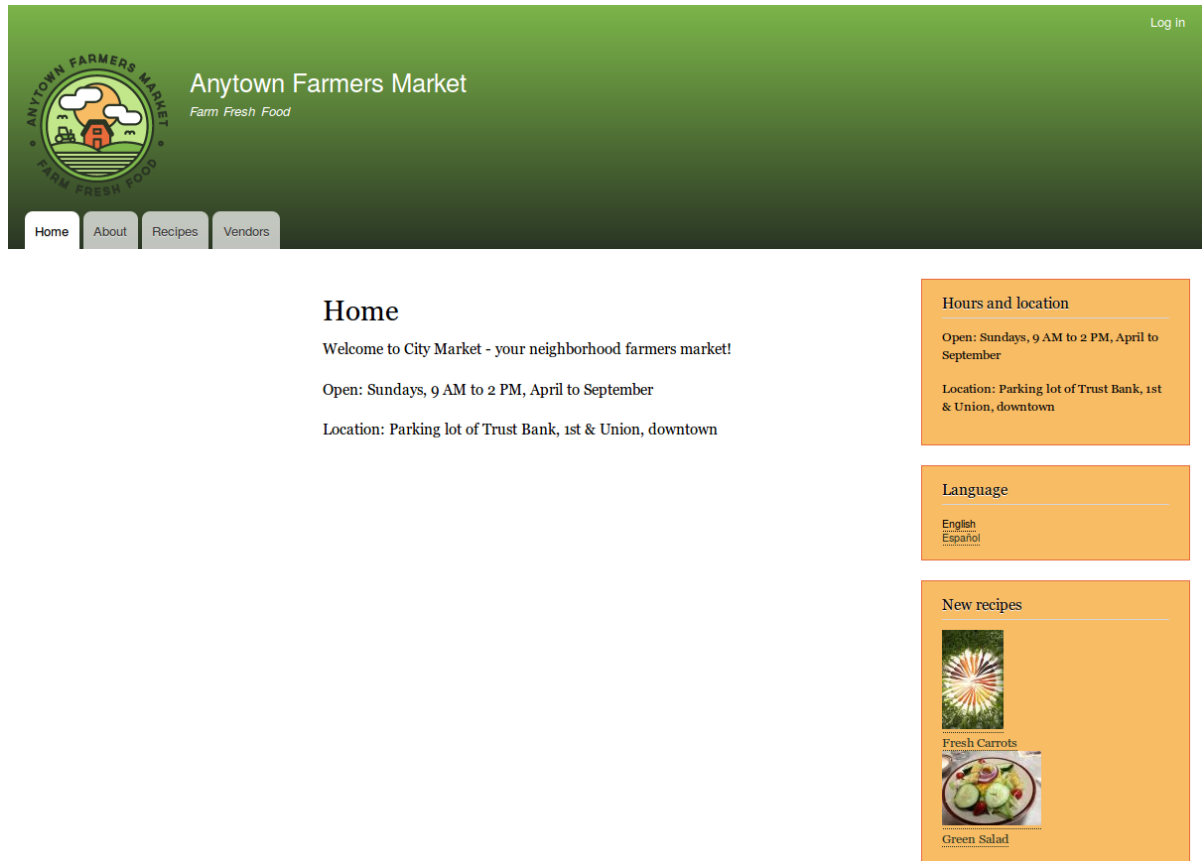
Anytown Farmers Market is currently under maintenance. We should be back shortly. Thank you for your patience.

## Disabling maintenance mode

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Maintenance mode* (*admin/config/development/maintenance*). The *Maintenance mode* page appears.
2. Fill in the fields as shown below.

| Field name                                  | Explanation                                                         | Value     |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Put site into maintenance mode              | Disable the maintenance mode                                        | Unchecked |
| Message to display when in maintenance mode | No message required while disabling. You can leave the field blank. |           |

3. Click *Save configuration*.
4. Verify that the site is no longer in maintenance mode by accessing it from another browser where you aren't logged in. If you are not able to verify, try clearing the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).



## Expand your understanding

- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 11.3. Downloading and Installing a Module from *Drupal.org*

### Goal

Download and install the [contributed Admin Toolbar module](#), which allows you to easily browse through the administration section of the website.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- If you want to install modules via the website, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

### Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install a contributed module. If you are installing a custom module rather than a contributed module, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to download and unpack the module files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, "Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files"](#). If you are installing a contributed module with external dependencies that are managed by Composer, follow the steps for downloading in [#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#). In either of these cases, then continue here with step <sup>7</sup> in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

## Using the administrative interface

1. On the *Admin toolbar* project page on drupal.org ([https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\\_toolbar](https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar)), scroll to the *Downloads* section at the bottom of the page.
2. Copy the address of the *tar.gz* link. Depending on your device and browser, you might do this by right clicking and selecting *Copy link address*.

### Downloads

#### Recommended releases

| Version  | Download                                                           | Date        |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 8.x-1.16 | <a href="#">tar.gz (55.55 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (62.65 KB)</a> | 2016-Jul-28 |

#### Development releases

| Version     | Download                                                           | Date        |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 8.x-1.x-dev | <a href="#">tar.gz (16.89 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (26.26 KB)</a> | 2016-Aug-19 |

[View all releases](#)

3. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend* (*admin/modules*). The *Extend* page appears.
4. Click *Install new module*. The *Install new module* page appears.

## Install new module ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Extend](#)

You can find [modules](#) and [themes](#) on [drupal.org](#). The following file extensions are supported: *zip tar tgz gz bz2*.

**Install from a URL**

For example: <http://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/name.tar.gz>

**Or**

**Upload a module or theme archive to install**

No file selected.

For example: *name.tar.gz* from your local computer

5. In the field *Install from a URL*, paste the copied download link. This value could look like this: [https://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/admin\\_toolbar-8.x-1.14.tar.gz](https://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/admin_toolbar-8.x-1.14.tar.gz)

6. Click *Install* to upload and unpack the new module on the server. The files are being downloaded to the *modules* directory.
7. Click *Enable newly added modules* to return to the *Extend* page. If you used the manual uploading procedure, start with this step, and reach the *Extend* page by using the *Manage* administrative menu and navigating to *Extend* (*admin/modules*).
8. Locate and check *Admin toolbar*.
9. Click *Install* to turn on the new module.

## Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the module you want to install, which is the last segment of the module's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is [https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\\_toolbar](https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar), the project name is "admin\_toolbar".
2. Run the following Drush commands, giving the project name (for example, admin\_toolbar) as a parameter:  

```
drush dl admin_toolbar  
drush en admin_toolbar
```
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Expand your understanding

- Verify that the [contributed Admin Toolbar module](#) is working by browsing through the menu in the administration section.
- Install and configure the [contributed Pathauto module](#) so that content pages in your site get nice URLs by default. See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more on URLs.
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Contributed modules"](#)

- ["Download and Extend" page on Drupal.org](#)
- [Admin Toolbar module on Drupal.org](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 11.4. Finding Themes

### Goal

Find and evaluate themes on *Drupal.org*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)

### Steps

1. Go to <https://www.drupal.org>, and navigate to *Download & Extend > Themes* ([https://www.drupal.org/project/project\\_theme](https://www.drupal.org/project/project_theme)).
2. Filter your search using the categories on the theme search page. For example, you might use these filters:

| Field name         | Explanation                                                                                                                            | Example value       |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Maintenance status | How actively is the theme maintained? If a theme is actively maintained, you can expect bug fixes and improvements on a regular basis. | Actively maintained |
| Development status | What kind of development is the theme undergoing? If you select <i>Under active development</i> , you can expect                       | Any                 |



| Field name         | Explanation                                                                                                                                                     | Example value  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
|                    | new features to be added, and some aspects may still change. If you select <i>Maintenance fixes only</i> , it means that the theme is considered complete.      |                |
| Core compatibility | The Drupal version the theme is compatible with.                                                                                                                | 8.x            |
| Status             | <i>Sandbox projects</i> are experimental projects. <i>Full projects</i> have already gone through an approval process, but they can still be in development.    | Full projects  |
| Search Themes      | Search by search term in the theme's description.                                                                                                               | -              |
| Sort by            | Order your search results by criteria like <i>Most installed</i> (popular themes that many sites use) or <i>Last release</i> (date of latest version released). | Most installed |

**179 Themes match your search**

Maintenance status Actively maintained ▼

Development status - Any - ▼

Core compatibility 8.x ▼

Status Full projects ▼

Stability All projects ▼

Search Themes

Sort by Most installed ▼

Search

3. Click *Search*. Search results will appear.

## Bootstrap

Posted by [wundo](#) on 18 May 2008

“ Sleek, intuitive, and powerful mobile first front-end framework for faster and easier web development. Bootstrap has become one of the most popular front-end frameworks and open source projects in the world.

This base theme bridges the gap between Drupal and the [Bootstrap Framework](#).

### Features

- [jsDelivr CDN](#) for "out-of-the-box" styling and faster page load times.
- [Bootstrap](#) theme support, if using the CDN.
- Glyphicons support via [Icon API](#).
- Extensive integration and template/preprocessor overrides for most of the [Bootstrap Framework](#) CSS, Components and JavaScript
- Theme settings to further enhance the Drupal Bootstrap integration:
  - [Breadcrumbs](#)
  - [Navbar](#)
  - [Popovers](#)
  - [Tooltips](#)
  - [Wells](#) (per region)

### Documentation

Visit the project's [official documentation site](#) or the markdown files inside the `./docs` directory.

### Supported modules

#### Drupal 8

- [Bootstrap Layouts](#)

#### Drupal 7

- [Bootstrap Core](#)
- [jQuery Update](#)
- [Icon API](#)
- [Picture](#)
- [Views](#) (partial support)
- [Webform](#) (partial support)

### 5 Year Evolution (gource)

<https://youtu.be/Cvq6MPJp2dI>

4. To further evaluate a theme, click its title in the list of search results to visit its project page.

Some aspects to pay attention to while evaluating themes:

- Introduction: The description of the theme on its project page should be clear and useful. A screenshot of the theme helps your evaluation as well.
- Downloads: The theme should be available for your version of the core software. Pay attention to the color-coding: Themes marked green are recommended to be used on

live sites, the ones marked yellow should be carefully evaluated before use, and the ones marked red are only recommended for testing.

- Project Information: Check the theme's maintenance and development status, and how frequently it's downloaded and installed.
- Issues: See if there are any open issues or potential problems with the theme.
- Resources: Check if the theme has documentation.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#).

## 11.5. Downloading and Installing a Theme from *Drupal.org*

### Goal

Download and install a theme from *Drupal.org*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 11.4, "Finding Themes"](#)
- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)

### Site prerequisites

If you want to install via the website, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing modules.

If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

## Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install a contributed theme. If you are installing a custom theme rather than a contributed theme, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to download and unpack the theme files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, “Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files”](#). If you are installing a contributed theme with external dependencies that are managed by Composer, follow the steps for downloading in [#### 11.9, “Using Composer and Git to Download Files”](#). In either of these cases, then continue here with step <sup>7</sup> in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

## Using the administrative interface

1. On the theme’s project page on drupal.org (for example, <https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo>), scroll to the *Downloads* section at the bottom of the page.
2. Right-click *tar.gz* to copy the address.

### Downloads

| Version | Download                                                             | Date        |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 8.x-1.3 | <a href="#">tar.gz (437.31 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (486.26 KB)</a> | 2016-May-09 |
| 7.x-2.6 | <a href="#">tar.gz (411.91 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (441.6 KB)</a>  | 2015-Nov-11 |
| 7.x-1.4 | <a href="#">tar.gz (386.35 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (403.15 KB)</a> | 2015-Nov-11 |

### Development releases

|             |                                                                      |             |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 8.x-1.x-dev | <a href="#">tar.gz (437.31 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (486.27 KB)</a> | 2016-Apr-27 |
| 7.x-2.x-dev | <a href="#">tar.gz (411.92 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (441.62 KB)</a> | 2016-Feb-11 |

[View all releases](#)

3. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance* (*admin/appearance*). The *Appearance* page appears.
4. Click *Install new theme*. The *Install new theme* page appears.

## Install new theme ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#)

You can find [modules](#) and [themes](#) on [drupal.org](#). The following file extensions are supported: `zip tar tgz gz bz2`.

### Install from a URL

For example: `http://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/name.tar.gz`

Or

### Upload a module or theme archive to install

 No file selected.

For example: `name.tar.gz` from your local computer

**Install**

5. In the field *Install from a URL*, paste the copied download link. This value could look like `https://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/mayo-8.x-1.3.tar.gz`.
6. Click *Install* to upload and unpack the new theme on the server. The files are being downloaded to the *themes* directory.
7. Click *Install newly added themes* to return to the *Appearance* page. If you used the manual uploading procedure, start with this step, and reach the *Appearance* page by using the *Manage* administrative menu and navigating to *Appearance (admin/appearance)*.
8. Locate the new theme under *Uninstalled themes* and click *Install and set as default* to use it. All non-administrative pages on the site will now use this new theme.



## Mayo 8.x-1.3

Simple but fully customizable and colorable responsive layout theme.

[Install](#) | [Install and set as default](#)

### Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the theme you want to install, which is the last segment of the theme's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is <https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo>, the project name is `mayo`.
2. Run the following Drush commands, giving the project name (for example, *mayo*) as a parameter:  

```
drush dl mayo  
drush en mayo  
drush config-set system.theme default mayo
```
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

### Expand your understanding

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance* (*admin/appearance*) and uninstall any themes that you are not using.
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)

- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#), and [Boris Doesborgh](#).

# 11.6. Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files

## Goal

Manually download module or theme files and upload them to your site, if the website or Drush methods for installing or updating a module or theme do not work, or if you are placing a custom-written module or theme.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.4, "Finding Themes"](#)

## Site prerequisites

You need to be facing any of the following to perform the manual download described in this topic:

- File permission issues
- FTP permission issues
- You created a custom module/theme or received its files from someone
- You could not successfully complete the instructions in [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), or [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

Skip this topic if none of the above applies to you.

## Steps

If you are installing a module or theme from *Drupal.org*, follow the downloading instructions, and then the uploading/unpacking instructions. If you created the module or theme, skip the downloading step. Instead, create an archive file (that you know how to extract on the server) and proceed with the steps in uploading/unpacking, using whatever method is appropriate for the way you initially created the archive file.

### Downloading the files

1. Open the module or theme project page on *drupal.org*; for example, the *Admin toolbar* page ([https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\\_toolbar](https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar)).
2. Scroll to the *Downloads* section near the bottom of the page.

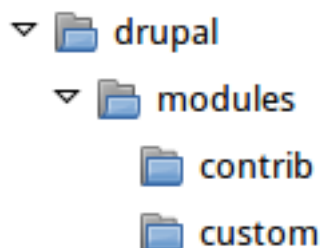
#### Downloads

| Version                           | Download                                                           | Date        |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 8.x-1.19                          | <a href="#">tar.gz (17.07 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (27.02 KB)</a> | 2017-Apr-06 |
| <b>Development releases</b>       |                                                                    |             |
| 8.x-1.x-dev                       | <a href="#">tar.gz (19.49 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (29.81 KB)</a> | 2017-Jun-11 |
| <a href="#">View all releases</a> |                                                                    |             |

3. Click *tar.gz* to download the file to your computer.

### Uploading the files to your site and unpacking them

1. If you are adding a new module or theme, create subdirectories in your top-level *modules* and *themes* directories (if they don't already exist). Typically, people make a *contrib* subdirectory for contributed modules and themes that are downloaded from *Drupal.org*, and a *custom* subdirectory for modules and themes that they created. Your *modules* directory might look like this:





2. If you are replacing an existing module or theme with an updated version, put the site into maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
3. If you are replacing an existing module or theme with an updated version, find and delete all the existing files and directories for the existing module or theme. Modules are normally located in directories under the top-level *modules* directory, and themes are normally located in directories under the top-level *themes* directory.
4. Upload the *.tar.gz* file (or whatever archive you created) to your site. Place it in either the same location from which you deleted the directory (if replacing an existing module or theme) or the appropriate subdirectory of *modules* or *themes* (if adding a new module or theme).
5. Extract the files from the *.tar.gz* archive (or whatever archive you created), making a subdirectory in the same location as the archive file. If you do not have terminal access, or your hosting server is not running Linux, your hosting control panel's file manager should provide a way to extract the files. If you have terminal access to your hosting server (running Linux) and you are using a *.tar.gz* file, you can use a command like:  

```
tar -xzf admin_toolbar-8.x-1.17.tar.gz
```
6. Delete the compressed file from the server, unless your unpacking method already deleted it.
7. Refer to [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), or [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#) to complete the installation or update of the module or theme. Start at the step after the automatic download has been completed.

## Expand your understanding

- If you work with multiple environments (for example, a local development site and a production site) you will have to repeat the steps on each environment, or re-clone the environment. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- If you added a new theme, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Appearance* (*admin/appearance*) and uninstall the old theme.

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Updating modules"](#)

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Installing contributed modules \(Drupal 8\)"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Installing themes"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Marc Isaacson](#).

## 11.7. Concept: Development Sites

### What are Development Sites?

Development Sites are different copies of the same site used for developing, updating, and testing a site without risking the integrity of the live site.

An example deployment workflow for site building will usually include the sites mentioned below:

#### Local environment

The development process starts with developers working on new features, bug fixes, theming, and configuration in their local environment.

#### Development site

Developers push the changes they've been working on to the development site. For a team of more than one developer, version control is usually used. Git is a version control system that tracks your files for any changes. You can then commit those changes to a repository. Using Git allows team members to work on the same site without overriding each other's work. It also makes it possible to easily roll back to previous stages of the development.

#### Staging site

The staging site can be used for testing, or presenting the changes to the client for approval. QA (Quality Assurance) and UAT (User Acceptance Testing) are most often carried out on the staging site. It is recommended to have live content on both the development and staging sites, so that you can test how the new features will work with the existing content.

#### Production site

The live site on the web available to visitors. It contains new features that have been proven safe to go live.

Based on the project's size, scope, requirements, or stakeholders, stages from the above workflow can be removed, or additional stages can be added. For example, a testing site before staging can be added to separate testing and user acceptance processes.

## Related topics

- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 2.6, "#####: #####"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Introduction to Git"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Diána Lakatos](#), and [Joy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 11.8. Making a Development Site

### Goal

Make a copy of a site that you can use to develop new features and test updates on.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- You have a live, developed site that you would like to make a copy of for development purposes.
- If you want to use Drush for some of the steps in this task, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

### Steps

1. Follow the steps in [#### 3.3, "#####"](#), so that you have hosting set up for your development site, you know where the web root is for your development site, and you have an empty database and database user for your development site to use.
2. Make a database dump file from your live site's database. Try one of the following methods:

- If you are using MySQL as your database, and your live site's server has phpMyAdmin installed (it is available from many hosting control panels), use the *Export* tab in phpMyAdmin to export in *SQL* format. Using *gzip* compression on the output file is suggested, to reduce the file size.
- If you are using MySQL and have access to the command line, use this command (substituting in your site's database name, user name, and password):

```
mysqldump -u USERNAME -p'PASSWORD' DATABASENAME > BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- If you prefer to use Drush, use this command:

```
drush sql-dump > BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- Use the [contributed Backup and Migrate module](#) from within your live site. See [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#) for instructions on installing contributed modules.

You now have a database dump stored in the file *BACKUPFILE.sql*. For security reasons, avoid storing this file on your hosting server anywhere under the Drupal site root. This will prevent others from getting a copy of your database.

3. Copy all of the files from the web root of your live site to the web root of your development site.

4. Edit the *sites/default/settings.php* file under your development site's top-level directory in a plain-text editor. Find the lines near the end that contain the database name, database username, and database password, and update them to the information about the development site database you set up. The lines look something like this (before editing):

```
$databases['default']['default'] = array (
  'database' => 'live_site_database_name',
  'username' => 'live_site_database_username',
  'password' => 'live_site_database_password',
```

5. Check whether your *settings.php* file has the following setting; if yes, then you will need to edit this to point to your development site URL instead of your production site URL:

```
$settings['trusted_host_patterns']
```

6. Import the database dump file you created, into the development site's database. Try one of the following methods:

- If you are using MySQL as your database, and your live site's server has PHPMyAdmin installed (it is available from many hosting control panels), use the *Import* tab in PHPMyAdmin. You may find that you have to restart the import a few times, if your database was large.

- If you are using MySQL and have access to the command line, use this command (substituting in your site's database name, user name, and password; if you made a gzip-compressed backup file, you will also need to uncompress it first):

```
mysql -u USERNAME -pPASSWORD DATABASE_NAME < BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- If you prefer to use Drush, use this command:

```
drush sql-query --file=BACKUPFILE.sql
```

7. If your development and live sites need to have different configuration, then you have to use configuration overrides in the *settings.php* file. The *\$config* variable will help you

maintain override values separately from the standard configuration data. For instance, you might want the site name to be "Anytown Farmers Market" on the production site, but "Development Site for Anytown Farmers Market" on the development site. To do that, you could have the production value in the site configuration (in the database), and on the development site, in the *settings.php* file, you would need to have:

```
$config['system.site']['name'] = "Development Site for Anytown Farmers Market";
```

## Expand your understanding

- Verify that the development site is working correctly.
- Log in to the development site as an administrator, and clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).
- [#### 11.10, "Deploying New Site Features"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Backing up a site"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Create a Test Site"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#), and [Joey Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 11.9. Using Composer and Git to Download Files

### Goal

Use Composer and/or Git to download files and dependencies in the core software, or in add-on modules and themes.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

### Site prerequisites

If you want to use Git or Composer, they must be installed either on a local development server or your live site. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

### Steps

If you are unable to install the Git or Composer tools on your live server, after following the steps in any of the sections below on your local server, you will need to transfer any updated or added files to your live server. The recommended procedure is to make an archive or zip file of the new and changed files, transfer the archive to your live server, and extract it there. If you are using Composer, make sure to check for updates and additions to the following files, in the root of your installation:

- *vendor* directory
- *autoload.php*
- *composer.json*
- *composer.lock*

### Using Git to download a project

Follow these steps if you want to download the development version of the core software, or of a contributed module or theme, from the project's Git version control repository:

1. In a command-line window, change to one level above the directory where you want the files to reside. For the core software, this would be your web root. For an add-on module,

this would be the *modules* directory, or a sub-directory like *contrib* under the modules directory.

2. Locate the page for the project that you want to download on *Drupal.org*; for example, <https://www.drupal.org/project/drupal> for the core software, or [https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\\_toolbar](https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar) for the contributed Admin Toolbar module.
3. Click the *Version control* link near the top of the page, which opens up a page giving Git commands for this project.
4. Copy the `git clone` command under *Setting up repository for the first time*, and paste it into your command line. For example, it might be:  

```
git clone --branch 8.2.x https://git.drupal.org/project/drupal.git
```
5. This will create a directory named with the short name of the project (*drupal* in this example), and download the required files into that directory. If necessary, rename the directory.
6. If you downloaded the *drupal* project (the core software), follow the instructions below to download its external dependencies.
7. Later on, you can change to the created directory and run the command `git pull` to update the files to the latest version from the Git repository for the project.

## Using Composer to download external core dependencies

Follow these steps if you downloaded the core software files using Git, which does not include the external dependencies:

1. Change to the core software's root directory.
2. Run the command `composer install` at the command line. The external dependencies will be downloaded.

## Using Composer to download the core software

Follow these steps if you have not yet downloaded or installed the core software, and you want to use Composer to download both the core software and its external dependencies:

1. At the command line, change to one level above the directory where you want the software to reside.
2. Enter this command, where `my_site_name` is the directory you want to create:  

```
composer create-project drupal/drupal my_site_name
```

## Using Composer to download a module or theme

Follow these steps if you have already downloaded the core software, and you want to use Composer to add a contributed module or theme (usually because it has external dependencies that need to be downloaded with Composer):

1. If you have not already done so, tell Composer about the download location for contributed modules and themes, by entering this command from the root of your site installation:  

```
composer config repositories.drupal composer https://packages.drupal.org/8
```
2. If you have not already done so, you can optionally override the default location where Composer will put downloaded modules and themes. For example, typically you would want contributed modules to go in a *contrib* subdirectory of the top-level *modules* directory, instead of the default location of *modules*. To make this change, edit the *composer.json* file at the root level in your site installation. Find the line that says "extra": {, and add these lines following that line:  

```
"installer-paths": {
    "modules/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-module"],
    "modules/custom/{$name}": ["type:drupal-custom-module"],
    "profiles/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-profile"],
    "themes/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-theme"],
    "themes/custom/{$name}": ["type:drupal-custom-theme"],
    "libraries/{$name}": ["type:drupal-library"],
    "drush/{$name}": ["type:drupal-drush"]
},
```
3. Each time you want to add a contributed module or theme, determine the project's short name. This is the last part of the URL of the project page; for example, the Geofield module, at <https://www.drupal.org/project/geofield>, has short name *geofield*.
4. To download the contributed module or theme, along with its external dependencies, enter the following command at the root of your site (substituting the short name of the module or theme for *geofield*):  

```
composer require drupal/geofield
```

## Using Composer to update a project's files

Follow these steps to update the files for the core software or a contributed module or theme, after having already started to manage dependencies with Composer:

1. Determine the short name of the project you want to update. For the core software, it is *drupal*. For contributed modules and themes, it is the last part of the URL of the project



page; for example, the Geofield module, at <https://www.drupal.org/project/geofield>, has

short name `geofield`.

2. Determine how to enter the version number you want to update to. For example, for version 8.x-1.7 of a contributed module, you would enter just the `1.7`, and for the core software version `8.3.1`, you would enter `8.3.1`.
3. Enter the following command at the root of your site (substituting the short name of the module or theme for `geofield` and the correct version number):

```
composer require drupal/geofield:1.7
```

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Using Composer with Drupal"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) from ["Using Composer with Drupal"](#), copyright 2000-2017 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 11.10. Deploying New Site Features

### Goal

Copy a view that you have created in a local development site to the production site.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 11.11, "Synchronizing Configuration Versions"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Configuration Manager module must be installed in both the development and production sites. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing core modules.

- The Vendor content type must exist in both the development and production sites, with the same fields. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).
- The Vendors view must exist in the development site but not the production site. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#).

## Steps

1. Open the local development site.
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronization > Export > Single item* (*admin/config/development/configuration/single/export*). The *Single export* page appears.
3. Select *View* from the *Configuration type* list.
4. Select *Vendors* from the *Configuration name* list. The configuration appears in the textarea.
5. Copy the configuration from the textarea.

## Single export ☆

Synchronize
Import
Export

Full archive
Single item

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Development](#) » [Synchronize](#)

Choose a configuration item to display its YAML structure.

**Configuration type**

View ▾

**Configuration name**

Vendors (vendors) ▾

**Here is your configuration:**

```

uuid: bf3b16f1-4807-4899-9c76-94dd2f97b3c7
langcode: en
status: true
dependencies:
  config:
    - core.entity_view_mode.node.teaser
    - field.storage.node.body
    - field.storage.node.field_main_image
    - image.style.medium
    - node.type.vendor
    - system.menu.main
  module:
    - image
    - node
    - text
    - user
id: vendors
label: Vendors
module: views
description: ''
tag: ''
base_table: node_field_data
base_field: nid
core: 8.x

```

6. Open the production site.
7. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronizationImport > Single item* (*admin/config/development/configuration*). The *Import* page appears.
8. Select *View* from the *Configuration type* list.
9. Paste the configuration in the textarea.
10. Click *Import*. The confirmation page appears.
11. Click *Confirm*.

12. Verify that the view was imported by navigating in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Views*.

## Expand your understanding

The steps in this topic show how to export and import a single configuration item. However, often if you develop functionality on a development website and want to transfer it to your production site, you will need to transfer multiple configuration items. For instance, if you developed a new content type with fields, you would need to transfer several configuration items for each field, one for the content type itself, and possibly multiple view mode and form mode items, and they would have to be transferred in the right order. Getting this right can be both tedious and difficult.

As an alternative, you can export and import the complete configuration of the site. For this, you would need a local development site that is a clone of the production site (see [#### 11.8, “Making a Development Site”](#)), and then you can follow the steps in [#### 11.11, “Synchronizing Configuration Versions”](#) to synchronize configuration between development and production sites.

Another alternative is to use the [contributed Features module](#), which allows exporting and importing bundled functionality (for example, all the configuration for a photo gallery).

Finally, if you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, “Clearing the Cache”](#).

## Related concepts

- [#### 11.7, “Concept: Development Sites”](#)
- [#### 2.6, “#####: #####”](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 11.11. Synchronizing Configuration Versions

### Goal

Synchronize the configuration between a development and live site.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 3.3, "##### ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)

## Site prerequisites

- You must have a development copy of your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- The core Configuration Manager module must be installed on both the development and production sites. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on how to install core modules.
- You must have changed configuration on either the production or development site (the *source site*), and want to synchronize the changes to the other site (the *destination site*). As an example, you can develop a new content type, fields, and views on your development site, and when it is all working correctly, deploy the changes to the live site.
- All configuration that should not be synchronized between the source and destination sites must be stored in configuration overrides in the *settings.php* file rather than in the database. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).

## Steps

1. In the source site, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronization > Export* (*admin/config/development/configuration/full/export*).
2. Click *Export*. Your site will generate an archive of the full site configuration. Save the file on your local computer.

3. In the destination site, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration* > *Development* > *Configuration synchronization* > *Import* (*admin/config/development/configuration/full/import*).
4. Browse to find the downloaded configuration archive, and click *Upload*. Your configuration archive will be uploaded to the destination site, and you will be redirected to the configuration *Synchronize* page (*admin/config/development/configuration*) with a message saying your files were uploaded.
5. Verify that the differences shown on the page are what you expect. You may see configuration items that have been added, deleted, or changed; for changed items, you can click *View differences* to see what the changes are.
6. When you are satisfied, click *Import all* to import the configuration changes.

## Expand your understanding

- If the changes you have made involve only one configuration item (such as one view), you can use the single configuration export/import feature to deploy the change between sites. See [#### 11.10, “Deploying New Site Features”](#).
- After the step where you export the full configuration from the source site, you might also want to unpack the archive and commit it to a version control system, such as Git, to track changes in your site configuration. See [#### 3.2, “#####: #####”](#).

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

---

# تال کشم لح و یری گشی پ 12. ل صرف

## 12.1. Concept: Cache

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)

### What is the page cache?

The software that runs your site, on each page request, must perform calculations and retrieve data from the database, in order to compose the page that is sent to the web browser or other application that is accessing the site. These calculations take time, which can mean that your page load time is longer than would be desirable.

There are several ways that page load time can be sped up, including installing software on the server. The system includes the core Internal Page Cache and Dynamic Page Cache modules, which do not require any additional server software; they use a *database cache*

mechanism to speed up your site. The way these modules work is that during page calculations, intermediate results and the final page output are stored in a special database area (known as the *cache*). Then the next time a compatible request is made, intermediate

or final results, as appropriate, can be retrieved and used rather than redoing the entire calculation. In addition, when content or data that affects a particular calculation is updated, the affected cached data is removed from the cache, forcing that part of the calculation to be redone the next time it is needed.

These caching modules normally work reasonably well, and offer at least some speed-up for most sites. However, sometimes the page cache can have problems, such as:

- Corrupted data in the cache, leading to garbled or incorrect page output
- Old data remaining in the cache too long, leading to outdated page output
- Insufficient caching, leading to slow page loads

### What other data is cached?

Independent of whether the two page cache modules are installed on your site, the software that your site runs will still cache the output of many internal calculations. The core systems that cache data include:

- The theme system caches information in the database cache about which template files are used to render various types of data. If you are developing a new theme and add a new template file, you'll need to clear this cache to have your theme file recognized.

- CSS and JavaScript files can optionally be optimized and compressed (depending on your site settings). If so, the compressed versions are stored in the file system so that they don't have to be re-optimized too often. If you are developing a module or theme, you may need to either turn off or clear this file cache to have changes to CSS or JavaScript files be recognized.
- The system locates certain low-level PHP functions and classes, such as *hook implementations* and *plugin classes*, from your installed modules and stores information about which module has which functionality. If you are developing a new module or adding features to an existing module, you may need to clear this cache to have your new features be recognized.

## Related topics

If you have problems with your site, the first thing to try to fix it is usually to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#) for more information.

## Additional resources

Learn about additional caching and performance optimization methods in the [Drupal.org community documentation page "Caching to improve performance"](#).

### Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 12.2. Clearing the Cache

### Goal

Clear or rebuild your site's internal caches to ensure they are up-to-date with the most recent data, using the user interface or Drush.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#)
- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)



## Site prerequisites

If you want to use Drush to clear the cache, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

## Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to clear the cache.

### Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Performance* (*admin/config/development/performance*).
2. Click *Clear all caches*.
3. A message saying the cache has been cleared appears at the top of the page.

### Using Drush

You can use one of two commands:

- Use the command `drush cache-rebuild` to clear and rebuild all cached data for a site. After running this command, you will see the output message "Cache rebuild complete."
- Use the command `drush cc` to see a list of individual caches and then choose the specific cache you would like to clear. Running this command should produce output like the following:

```
> drush cc
Enter a number to choose which cache to clear.
[0] : Cancel
[1] : drush
[2] : theme-registry
[3] : menu
[4] : css-js
[5] : block
[6] : module-list
[7] : theme-list
[8] : render
[9] : views
```

Choose a cache to clear by entering the number associated with that cache. Press "Enter" to continue.

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Clearing or rebuilding Drupal's cache"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Joe Shindelar](#) and [Jack Haas](#) from "[Clearing or rebuilding Drupal's cache](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 12.3. Concept: Data Backups

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 3.3, "##### #####"](#)

### What is a site backup?

If something happens to the computer (or computers) that your site and its database are running on, or if you lose access to this computer, you could lose some or all of your site's data. You could also lose data if your site is hacked, or if someone with administrative privileges on your site deletes or alters data mistakenly from the administrative interface. In order to prevent scenarios like this from being permanent, expensive data losses, it is important to make regular backups of your site's data, and to store them in a location that is separate from the computer where your site is running.

The frequency with which you should make data backups, and how many backups you should keep, depends on how frequently your site is changing. If you have a very large amount of content on your site that is being added to or updated many times per day, you would want to make more frequent backups than you would for a site that changes rarely. Also consider that some time could pass between when a data problem occurs and when you notice that it is a problem, so storing a sequence of backups (so that you can go back to the last known good data and retrieve that), rather than overwriting a single backup repeatedly, is a good practice.

Another consideration is that whatever format you store your backups in, it is a good idea to verify that you can actually retrieve lost data from your backups. You might want to test several possible data loss scenarios, and make sure that your data can be restored to the site in all cases.

In order to make a complete backup of your site, you will need to make copies of the following:

- The data in the *sites* directory, including the *sites/default/settings.php* file.
- The data in your site's database. A few tables can be truncated, such as those storing the temporary data cache and user login session information, but it is always safe to back up the entire database.
- Uploaded files, such as images and other attachments. The location of these files is configurable; the standard location is the *sites/default/files* directory under your site root.

In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > File system (admin/config/media/file-system)* to check the file upload locations; to change them, you'll need to edit your *settings.php* file.

- Modules, themes and any other software files you have customized. You can find customized modules and themes in the *modules* and *themes* directories respectively. Some people prefer to back up all software files, including core files and contributed modules and themes (which you could recover by downloading them again from the source), rather than trying to pick out specific files that definitely need to be backed up.

You can perform a test to confirm whether your backup has been done right by making a development copy of the site (see [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)).

## Related topics

- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Backing up a site"](#)
- The [contributed Backup and Migrate module](#), which can be used to set up automatic backups of the database and uploaded files.

### Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 12.4. Concept: Log

### What is a Log?

Your site captures system events in a log to be reviewed by an authorized individual at a later time. The log is a list of recorded events containing usage data, performance data, errors, warnings, and operational information. It is vital to check the log on a regular basis as it is often the only way to tell what is going on.

You can find your site's recent log messages in the *Manage* administrative menu by navigating to *Reports > Recent log messages (admin/reports/dblog)*.

### Recent log messages ☆

[View](#)
[Delete](#)

Home » Administration » Reports

The Database Logging module logs system events in the Drupal database. Monitor your site or debug site problems on this page.

▼ FILTER LOG MESSAGES

Type

- block\_content
- content
- cron
- language
- locale
- node
- system
- taxonomy

Severity

- Emergency
- Alert
- Critical
- Error
- Warning
- Notice
- Info
- Debug

Filter

| TYPE | DATE               | MESSAGE                                                   | USER                     | OPERATIONS |
|------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------|
| user | 08/26/2016 - 08:37 | Session opened for admin.                                 | admin                    |            |
| cron | 08/26/2016 - 08:37 | Cron run completed.                                       | Anonymous (not verified) |            |
| cron | 08/26/2016 - 08:37 | Execution of update_cron() took 282.93ms.                 | Anonymous (not verified) |            |
| cron | 08/26/2016 - 08:37 | Starting execution of update_cron(), execution of...      | Anonymous (not verified) |            |
| cron | 08/26/2016 - 08:37 | Starting execution of system_cron(), execution of node... | Anonymous (not verified) |            |
| cron | 08/26/2016 - 08:37 | Starting execution of node_cron(), execution of locale... | Anonymous (not verified) |            |
| cron | 08/26/2016 - 08:37 | Starting execution of locale_cron(), execution of file... | Anonymous (not verified) |            |
| cron | 08/26/2016 - 08:37 | Starting execution of file_cron(), execution of field...  | Anonymous (not verified) |            |

### Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) from "[Reports](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

## 12.5. Concept: Status Report

### What is a Status Report?

The status report is a short overview of your site's parameters as well as any problems detected with your installation. It may be useful to copy and paste this information into support requests filed on *Drupal.org's* support forums and project issue queues or when asking for help on other channels.

You can find the status report in the *Manage* administrative menu by navigating to *Reports > Status report (admin/reports/status)*.

| Status report ☆                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Home » Administration » Reports                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Here you can find a short overview of your site's parameters as well as any problems detected with your installation. It may be useful to copy and paste this information into support requests filed on Drupal.org's support forums and project issue queues. Before filing a support request, ensure that your web server meets the <a href="#">system requirements</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Drupal                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 8.2.0-dev                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Access to update.php                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Protected                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Configuration files                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Protected                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Cron maintenance tasks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Last run 1 minute 5 seconds ago<br>You can <a href="#">run cron manually</a> .<br>To run cron from outside the site, go to <a href="#">example.com/cron/N_A2qVbam3F_hvAXbBG0hHuOzorCEf3fHRbi43bWdecHN0YY9RZ_Yy5aUC_1nsiHoKb_HRjOlg?absolute=1</a> |
| Database system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | MySQL, MariaDB, Percona Server, or equivalent                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Database system version                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 5.5.47-0ubuntu0.14.04.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| ✗ Database updates                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Out of date<br>Some modules have database schema updates to install. You should run the <a href="#">database update script</a> immediately.                                                                                                       |
| ⚠ Drupal core update status                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Unknown release date (version 8.1.8 available)<br>There was a problem checking <a href="#">available updates</a> for Drupal. See the <a href="#">available updates</a> page for more information and to install your missing updates.             |
| Entity/field definitions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Up to date                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| File system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Writable ( <i>public</i> download method)                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| GD library                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 2.1.1-dev                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| GD library PNG support                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 2.1.1-dev                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

### Related topics

[#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) from "[Reports](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

---

# ی راده گن و تین ما 13. ل صرف

## 13.1. Concept: Cron

### What are cron tasks?

To ensure that your site and its modules continue to function well, a group of administrative operations should be run periodically. These operations are called *cron* tasks. Examples of cron tasks are: checking for module and theme updates, indexing content for search, or cleaning up temporary files.

### What is the relationship between the site's cron tasks and Unix cron?

Linux/Unix-based operating systems have a cron scheduler that can be used to run periodic tasks. You can use the server's cron scheduler to schedule runs of the site's cron tasks. Alternatively, you can use the core Automated Cron module to run tasks. You can check the site's cron tasks' status in the status report.

### Related topics

- [#### 13.2, "Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks"](#)
- [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)

### Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Setting up cron"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Dave Hansen-Lange](#) at [Advomatic](#), and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 13.2. Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks

### Goal

Check whether cron maintenance tasks are run regularly, and if not, either install the core Automated Cron module or run cron maintenance tasks from outside the website.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)

### Steps

1. Review the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)) to see when cron maintenance tasks were last run.

If you installed the website using the core Standard installation profile (or similar), then cron maintenance tasks might already be running via the core Automated Cron module. By default, these tasks are run about every three hours.

2. Choose whether to run cron maintenance tasks using the core Automated Cron module, or by other means. The core Automated Cron module might not be suitable for some websites because:
  - Each time someone accesses a page on the site, the module checks how long it has been since cron maintenance tasks have last run, and then runs them if necessary. If no one visits the website for a long time, cron maintenance tasks will not be run.
  - Cron maintenance tasks are run after the page has been generated. This means there is less time for the tasks to be run before various server timeouts are reached (for example, PHP execution timeout). If this happens, the logs (see [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#)) will show error messages that cron is unable to complete.
  - There is a small [scalability](#) cost associated with the core Automated Cron module. This is because one of the web server's processes is occupied (and can't serve other web pages) until the cron maintenance tasks are complete.
3. If you want to use the core Automated Cron module, first make sure it is installed (it is installed with the core Standard install profile; see [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) if it is not installed).

Next, configure the module to control how frequently cron maintenance tasks are run. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Cron* (*admin/*



`config/system/cron`). Choose the desired interval in the *Cron settings* section, and click *Save configuration*.

**Cron** ☆

Home » Administration » Configuration » System

Cron takes care of running periodic tasks like checking for updates and indexing content for search.

Run cron

Last run: 2 minutes 28 seconds ago.

To run cron from outside the site, go to [http://example.com/cron/V\\_A2qVbam3F\\_hvAXbBG0hHuOzorCEf3fHRbi43bWdecHN0YY9RZ\\_Yy5aUC\\_1nsiHoKb\\_HRjOIg](http://example.com/cron/V_A2qVbam3F_hvAXbBG0hHuOzorCEf3fHRbi43bWdecHN0YY9RZ_Yy5aUC_1nsiHoKb_HRjOIg)

▼ CRON SETTINGS

Run cron every

3 hours ▼

More information about setting up scheduled tasks can be found by [reading the cron tutorial on drupal.org](#).

Save configuration

- If you want to run cron maintenance tasks from outside the website, uninstall the core Automated Cron module (see [#### 4.4, "Uninstalling Unused Modules"](#)). Next, find the cron URL. This URL is shown in the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)), and in the *Cron* administration page (see previous step). The URL looks like this: `http://www.example.com/cron/0MgWtfB33FYbbQ5UAC3L0LL3RC0PT3RNUBZILLA0Nf1Re`

Whenever this URL is visited, cron maintenance tasks will run. Set up one of the following schedulers to access this URL regularly:

- [The Cron daemon](#) (Linux, OS X, Solaris, BSD)
- [Scheduled Tasks](#) (Windows)
- A cron SASS provider (software as a service)
- A cron manager provided by your web hosting provider (see the documentation provided by your provider)

## Related concepts

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drush page "Running Drupal cron tasks from Drush"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Setting up cron"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Dave Hansen-Lange](#) at [Advomatic](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 13.3. Concept: Security and Regular Updates

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 1.6, "#####: #####"](#)

### What are security updates?

Any software occasionally has bugs, and sometimes these bugs have security implications. When security bugs are fixed in the core software, modules, or themes that your site uses, they are released in a *security update*. You will need to apply security updates in order to keep your site secure. See [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#) to learn how to be notified of security updates by email, and [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), and [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#) to learn how to make updates.

### What is the security team?

The Drupal open-source project has a team of volunteers who track security-related bugs and release security updates. They also help other developers fix bugs, and maintain information for users on how to keep their websites secure. You can learn more about the security team and their practices and processes at the [Drupal.org Security Team](#) page.

## How are security bugs reported?

It is important that security problems be kept confidential until they are fixed, so that sites are less likely to be compromised before they can be secured. If you find a potential security problem in any of the software you downloaded from the *Drupal.org* website, follow the procedures on the [Drupal.org Security Team](#) page to report it.

## What are regular (non-security) updates?

The core software, modules, and themes also periodically have regular updates to add new features and fix bugs. These updates are less critical than security updates. As a general best practice, updates should be applied as long as they do not cause problems with your site. Testing on a development copy of your site is always a good idea before applying updates on a live site. This is because some updates may include changes that are not compatible with the modules or themes on your site, or that will break a particular functionality on your site.

## Related topics

- [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Securing your site"](#)
- ["Security advisories" on Drupal.org](#)
- [Drupal.org Security team](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 13.4. Keeping Track of Updates

### Goal

Keep your site safe and up-to-date by keeping up with the latest security updates.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

### Steps

There are a few different ways to receive notifications of security releases:

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Settings*.  
Enter the email addresses to be notified when updates are available. You can also specify whether you want daily or weekly updates. Click *Save configuration*.
- Subscribe to the security announcements email list. To subscribe, log in to *Drupal.org*, go to your user profile page and subscribe to the security newsletter on the *Edit > My newsletters* tab.
- Follow @drupalsecurity on Twitter.
- Subscribe to RSS feeds for [core security updates](#), [contributed project updates](#) and [public service announcements](#).

### Related concepts

- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

### Additional resources

- ["Security advisories" on Drupal.org](#)
- [Drupal.org Security Team](#)

- [@drupalsecurity on Twitter](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Sarah German](#) at [Advomatic](#).

# 13.5. Updating the Core Software

## Goal

Update the core software, either through the administrative interface or by using Drush.

## Site prerequisites

- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).

## Steps

1. Make a complete backup of your site. Refer to [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#).
2. Open *settings.php* (*/sites/default/settings.php*) in any plain text editor. Find the line with the `$settings[update_free_access]` variable. By default, it is set to "FALSE" due to security reasons. Change the setting to "TRUE":  

```
$settings['update_free_access'] = TRUE;
```
3. Disable any caching technique (memcache, varnish, and so on) your application might be using.
4. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
5. If you are using Composer to manage dependencies, or using Git, skip the next six steps, and instead see [#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#) for instructions on downloading updated files. Continue with the *update.php* step.

6. Download the tar.gz or zip file archive for the latest version of Drupal 8.x core from [Drupal.org Drupal Core Downloads](#). See [#### 3.3, "##### #### ###"](#) for more details on how to find the latest version.
7. Upload the archive file to your web hosting server.
8. Extract the archive file to a temporary directory on your server (should be outside the directory where the site is hosted). Your hosting control panel's file manager should provide a way to extract the files. Or, if you have terminal access to your hosting server (running Linux), you can use a command like:
 

```
tar -xzf drupal-8.3.2.tar.gz
```
9. You can also use Drush to download the archive and extract it in one step, by navigating to the temporary directory on the server and entering this command:
 

```
drush dl drupal
```
10. In your site hosting directory, delete the *core* and *vendor* directories, and all files that are not in a subdirectory, including *.htaccess*, *composer.json*, and *autoload.php*. Don't delete custom and customized files because you may end up losing the custom functionality stored in them.
11. Copy the *core* and *vendor* directories and the non-custom/non-customized files that you deleted in the preceding step from the temporary directory to your site directory.
12. Run the *update.php* script using either of the following:
  - Visit <http://www.example.com/update.php> in your browser (where *www.example.com* is your site's URL). Click *Continue* in the first screen to run the updates and successfully complete the script.
  - Run the following Drush command: 

```
drush updb
```
13. If you get any error or warning, re-run the *update.php* script again till all the updates have been completed successfully.
14. Open *settings.php* (*/sites/default/settings.php*) in a text editor. Find the line with the `$settings[ ]` variable and update it to "FALSE":
 

```
update_free_access
$settings['update_free_access'] = FALSE;
```
15. Click *Administration pages* to return to the administration section of your site.

16. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, “Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode”](#).
17. Clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, “Clearing the Cache”](#).
18. Re-enable any caching technique you disabled at Step <sup>3</sup>.
19. You should have the updated version running. You can verify the current version of your software by checking the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, “Concept: Status Report”](#)).

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 3.2, “#####: #####”](#)
- [#### 11.8, “Making a Development Site”](#)
- [#### 12.3, “Concept: Data Backups”](#)

## Related concepts

[#### 12.5, “Concept: Status Report”](#)

## Additional resources

- [“Drupal Core Downloads” page on Drupal.org](#)
- [“Registry Rebuild” page on Drupal.org](#)
- The file `/core/UPDATE.txt` within your installation.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), [Boris Doesborgh](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 13.6. Updating a Module

### Goal

Update a contributed module and run the *Database updates* script.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)

## Site prerequisites

- A contributed module has been installed and there is an update available for it. See [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#) and [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#).
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- You have created a full-site backup. See [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#).
- If you want to use the user interface, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing core modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

## Steps

Before you start, check for module-specific update instructions. This is typically necessary while updating modules that involve the usage of third-party libraries. Read and understand all module-specific requirements before proceeding with the updates. To find instructions, check the module's project page *Read Documentation* link.

To view further instructions, download the tar.gz or .zip file from the project page to your local computer. Unzip the file and look for *README.txt*, *INSTALL.txt*, and *UPGRADE.txt* that come with

the module's installation file. Also, review the release notes on the project page by clicking the version number you're downloading.

### Downloads

| Version         | Download                                                           | Date        |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>8.x-1.19</b> | <a href="#">tar.gz (17.07 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (27.02 KB)</a> | 2017-Apr-06 |

### Development releases

|             |                                                                    |             |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 8.x-1.x-dev | <a href="#">tar.gz (19.49 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (29.81 KB)</a> | 2017-Jun-11 |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|

[View all releases](#)



You can use the administrative interface or Drush to update a contributed module. If you are updating a custom module rather than a contributed module, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to obtain the new module files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, “Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files”](#). You can then continue here with step 6 in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

## Using the administrative interface

1. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, “Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode”](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Update* (*admin/reports/updates/update*).
3. Find and check the module in the list. Click *Download these updates* for the module.

### Update ☆

[List](#)
[Update](#)
[Settings](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Reports](#) » [Available updates](#)

Last checked: 4 minutes 5 seconds ago ([Check manually](#))

| <input type="checkbox"/> | NAME                          | INSTALLED VERSION | RECOMMENDED VERSION                        |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <a href="#">Admin Toolbar</a> | 8.x-1.15          | 8.x-1.16 ( <a href="#">Release notes</a> ) |

[Download these updates](#)

### Manual updates required

Updates of Drupal core are not supported at this time.

| NAME                        | INSTALLED VERSION | RECOMMENDED VERSION                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">Drupal core</a> | 8.2.0-dev         | 8.1.8 ( <a href="#">Release notes</a> ) |

4. Click *Continue*.

5. Click *Run database updates*. If you obtained the new module files manually, start with this step, and reach the database updates page by typing the URL *example.com/update.php* in your browser.
6. Click *Continue* and apply all updates. The database update scripts will be executed.
7. Click *Administration pages* to return to the administration section of your site.
8. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
9. Clear the cache (refer to [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)).

## Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the module you wish to update. It is the last segment of the module's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is *https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\_toolbar*, the project name is "admin\_toolbar".
2. Run the following Drush command, giving the project name (for example, `admin_toolbar`) as a parameter (if you have more than one module to update, add the additional module project names to the end of the command, separated by spaces):  
`drush up admin_toolbar`
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Expand your understanding

- Review the site log (refer to [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#)) once the updates are complete to check for errors.
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Updating modules"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborgh](#), and [Sarah German](#) at [Advomatic](#), from ["Updating modules"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 13.7. Updating a Theme

### Goal

Update a contributed theme on your site and run the *Database Updates* script.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- A contributed theme has been installed and there is an update available for it. See [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#) and [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#).
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- You have created a full site backup. See [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#).
- If you want to use the user interface, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing core modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

### Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to update a contributed theme. If you are updating a custom theme rather than a contributed theme, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to obtain the new theme files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, "Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files"](#), and then continue with step 6 in the instructions for administrative interface below.

## Using the administrative interface

1. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, “Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode”](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Update* (*admin/reports/updates/update*).
3. Find and check the theme in the list. Click *Download these updates* for the theme.

### Update ☆

[List](#)
[Update](#)
[Settings](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Reports](#) » [Available updates](#)

Last checked: 1 minute 1 second ago ([Check manually](#))

| <input type="checkbox"/> | NAME         | INSTALLED VERSION | RECOMMENDED VERSION                       |
|--------------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | MAYO (Theme) | 8.x-1.2           | 8.x-1.3 ( <a href="#">Release notes</a> ) |

[Download these updates](#)

### Manual updates required

Updates of Drupal core are not supported at this time.

| NAME                        | INSTALLED VERSION | RECOMMENDED VERSION                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">Drupal core</a> | 8.2.0-dev         | 8.1.8 ( <a href="#">Release notes</a> ) |

4. Click *Continue*.
5. Click *Run database updates*. If you obtained the new theme files manually, start with this step, and reach the database updates page by typing the URL *example.com/update.php* in your browser.
6. Click *Continue* to run the updates. The database update scripts will be executed.
7. Click *Administration pages* to return to the administration section of your site.
8. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, “Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode”](#).

9. Clear the Drupal cache (refer to [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)).

## Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the theme you wish to update, which is the last segment of the theme's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is *https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo*, the project name is "mayo".
2. Run the following Drush command, giving the project name (for example, <sup>mayo</sup>) as a parameter:  
`drush up mayo`
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Expand your understanding

- Review the site log, see [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#), once the updates are complete to check for errors.
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

---

# رځ آنځس 14. ل صرف

## 14.1. Connecting with the Community

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.6, "#####: ##### #####"](#)

### How can you connect with the community?

The Drupal project has a world-wide community of developers and users. One of the best ways to improve your knowledge of the platform is to connect with others that are using it, and get involved in the open-source community. There are many ways that you can get started:

#### Attend an event

There are both regional and international Drupal events held around the world. See the ["DrupalCon" page on Drupal.org](#) to find international events, and the ["Event Calendar" on groups.drupal.org](#) or [drupical.com](#) to find regional events.

#### Join a local group

There are Drupal user groups all around the world. Many of them have regular meetings, which you can attend to learn more about Drupal and connect to other Drupal users. Find local user groups on [groups.drupal.org](#).

#### Participate in a topical or language group

There are also interest groups for a wide range of topics, which have on-line discussion forums. Find topical groups on [groups.drupal.org](#). Many languages have their own websites too; you can find them on the ["Language-specific communities" page on Drupal.org](#).

#### Chat online

The Drupal project uses IRC for on-line chatting. There are regional, topical, and general-purpose chat groups available. Find out more on the ["IRC" page on Drupal.org](#).

#### Report a problem

See below.

#### Contribute

You can contribute your time and expertise to the community in many ways, such as:

- Developing modules or themes. See the ["Contribute to Development" page on Drupal.org](#), or improving them (using the issue queues for existing projects).
- Translating the user interface. See [localize.drupal.org](#).
- Writing documentation. See ["Contribute to Documentation" on Drupal.org](#).
- Answer Support questions. See [#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#).

## How can you report a problem or suggest a feature?

Each project within the community (such as the Drupal Core project for the base software, and projects for each contributed theme and module) uses *issues* to keep track of software

bugs and plans for new features. You can participate by creating a bug report when you find a problem, creating a feature request, or commenting on existing issues. Search before creating an issue, to make sure that the problem or feature has not already been reported or requested. See the [Drupal.org page "Use the issue queue"](#) and the [Drupal.org page "Reporting a problem"](#) for more information.

If you find a problem that you believe is related to security, such as a cross-site scripting vulnerability, do not report it in the standard issue queue. Instead, report it to the security team. See the [Drupal.org page "How to report a security issue"](#) for details.

## Related topics

[#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

## Additional resources

- ["Code of Conduct" on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Event Calendar" on groups.drupal.org](#) or [drupical.com](#)
- ["Where is the Drupal Community?" page on Drupal.org](#)
- [groups.drupal.org](#)
- ["IRC" page on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Ways to get involved" page on Drupal.org](#)

- [Drupal.org page "Why get involved?"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Contributor tasks"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Use the issue queue"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Reporting a problem"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "How to report a security issue"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#).

## 14.2. Getting Support

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.6, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

### Where can you find support?

The Drupal project is open-source, so if you have questions about or problems with the software, your options for finding answers and fixes are somewhat different from what they would be for commercial software.

There are several options for free support provided by community volunteers. First, some IRC channels, local groups, and language communities encourage support questions, through on-line chat, in-person meetings, or websites (find out more about these on [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)).

Second, some (but not all) contributed module, distribution, and theme projects encourage you to post support requests in issues. Generally, projects that have a very large number of users do not allow support requests in their issues (Drupal Core is in that category), while projects with a smaller number of users welcome the occasional support question. Be respectful of developer time and read the documentation for the project before posting a question in an issue. On the other hand, all projects encourage you to use issues to report problems and bugs; see [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#) to learn more about that.



In addition to those resources, the following sites provide free forums where volunteers answer support questions about Drupal:

- The [Drupal.org Forums](#)
- ["Drupal Answers" on StackExchange](#)

If you prefer to pay for support (presumably in exchange for more extensive service or better availability), you can find service providers in the ["Drupal Marketplace" on Drupal.org](#).

## Related topics

- [#### 14.3, "Learning More"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

## Additional resources

- ["Support" page on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Drupal Marketplace" on Drupal.org](#)
- The [Drupal.org Forums](#)
- ["Drupal Answers" on StackExchange](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 14.3. Learning More

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.6, "#####: ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

## Where can you go to learn more?

The following resources should prove useful to you, as you continue to advance your skills:

[\*"Drupal Community Documentation" section on Drupal.org\*](#)

Wiki-like documentation contributed by the Drupal community, ranging from basic to advanced, about all aspects of Drupal (site building and administration, theming, development, and contributed modules).

[\*api.drupal.org\*](#)

Reference documentation for programmers about the Drupal API.

[\*"Drupal Planet" page on Drupal.org\*](#)

An aggregation of blog posts about Drupal from around the web, posted by blogging members of the Drupal community who have applied for inclusion. Topics range from programming to site building to Drupal news.

Groups, events, and meetups

See ##### 14.1, [\*"Connecting with the Community"\*](#) for more about topical, regional, and language groups, as well as local, regional, and international events.

[\*"Training Marketplace" page on Drupal.org\*](#)

The Marketplace lists paid training providers. For free training, check whether events include training sessions; there are also free or very low-cost training events listed on the [\*"Global Training Days" page on Drupal.org\*](#).

Support sites

See ##### 14.2, [\*"Getting Support"\*](#) to locate support forums; searching them can be useful for learning about specific topics.

**Attributions**

Written by [\*Jennifer Hodgdon\*](#), and [\*Joe Shindelar\*](#) at [\*Drupalize.Me\*](#).

---

# ناگ ژاو

## Ajax

A web technology used to exchange data with a server to dynamically update parts of a web page (for example, forms) without needing entire page reloads.

## Alias

A user-friendly name to replace the internal [path](#) that the system assigns to a URL on the site. For example, you might assign an alias of */about* to the About page on your site, to replace the internal path */node/5*. This would give the page a URL of *http://example.com/about* instead of *http://example.com/node/5*. See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more information.

## Anonymous

A person ([user](#)) interacting with the site who is not logged in. See [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

## Block

A chunk of [content](#) (text, images, links, etc.) that can be displayed on a page of a site. Blocks are displayed in [regions](#). See [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#) for more information.

## Breakpoint

Breakpoints are used to separate the height or width of browser screens, printers, and other media output types into steps. A [responsive](#) site adjusts its presentation at these breakpoints. See [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#) for more information.

## Bundle

Synonym for [Entity subtype](#).

## Cache

The site's internal cache stores the output of time-consuming calculations, such as computing output for an HTML page request, and then retrieves them instead of recalculating the next time they are needed. External caching systems can also be used on the web server to speed up a site's response. See [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#) for more information on the internal cache.

## CMS

Acronym for [Content Management System](#).

## Configuration

Information about your site that is not [content](#), and is meant to be more permanent than [state](#) information, such as the name of your site, the [content types](#) and [views](#) you have defined, etc. See [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#) for more information.

## Content

Information meant to be displayed on your site, such as text, images, downloads, etc. See also [Configuration](#) and [State](#). See [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#) for more information.

## Content item

An item of [content](#) that is typically meant to be displayed as the main content of a page on your site. This is an [entity type](#). See [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Content Management System (CMS)

A collection of tools designed to allow the creation, modification, organization, search, retrieval and removal of information on a website. See [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### # ##### # ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Content type

An [entity subtype](#) for the [content item entity type](#). Each content type is used for some particular purpose on the site, and each has its own fields. For example, a site for a farmers market might have a content type for simple pages, and another for a vendor listing page. See [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Contextual link

A link to an administrative page for editing or configuring a feature of the site, shown in the context where that feature is displayed. Example: a link to configure a [menu](#) that is shown when you hover your mouse over the menu. See [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for more information.

## Contributed

[Modules](#), [themes](#), and [distributions](#) that are not part of the [Drupal core](#) download, and that can be downloaded separately from the [Drupal.org](#) website.



### Entity type

The overall type of an [entity](#); in common usage, it is only applied to a [content](#) entity.

Examples include [content types](#), [taxonomy terms](#), and custom [blocks](#). See [#### 2.3](#), ["#####: ##### # #####"](#) for more information.

### Field

Data of a certain type that is attached to a [content entity](#). For instance, on a farmers market site's vendor content type, you might have fields for an image, the vendor description, and a [taxonomy term](#). See [#### 2.3](#), ["#####: ##### # #####"](#) for more information.

### Field bundle

Synonym for [Entity subtype](#).

### Field formatter

[Configuration](#) that defines how the data in a [field](#) is displayed. For example, a text field could be displayed with a prefix and/or suffix, and it could have its HTML tags stripped out or limited. See also [View mode](#) and [Field widget](#). See [#### 6.10](#), ["Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#) for more information.

### Field widget

[Configuration](#) that defines how someone can enter or edit data for a [field](#) on a data entry form. For example, a text field could use a single-line or multi-line entry box, and there could be a setting for the size of the box. See also [Field formatter](#). See [#### 6.8](#), ["Concept: Forms and Widgets"](#) for more information.

### Formatter

See [Field formatter](#).

### FOSS

Acronym for *Free and Open Source Software*, meaning software that is developed by a community of people and released under a non-commercial license. See also [GPL](#). See [#### 1.6](#), ["#####: #####"](#) for more information.

## GPL

Acronym for the *GNU General Public License*, a non-commercial software license. All software downloaded from the [Drupal.org](http://Drupal.org) website is licensed under the "[GNU General Public License, version 2](#)". See also [FOSS](#). See [#### 1.7, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

## Image style

A set of processing steps that transform a base image into a new image; typical processing includes scaling and cropping. See [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#) for more information.

## LAMP

Acronym for *Linux, Apache, MySQL, and PHP*: the software on the web server that the scripts commonly run on (although it can use other operating systems, web servers, and databases). See [#### 3.1, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

## Log

A list of recorded events on the site, such as usage data, performance data, errors, warnings, and operational information. See [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#) for more information.

## Menu

A set of links used for navigation on a site, which may be arranged in a hierarchy. See [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#) for more information.

## Module

Software (usually PHP, JavaScript, and/or CSS) that extends site features and adds functionality. The Drupal project distinguishes between [core](#) and [contributed](#) modules.

See [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

## Path

The unique, last part of the internal URL that the system assigns to a page on the site, which can be a visitor-facing page or an administrative page. For example, the internal URL for the About page on your site might be <http://example.com/node/5>, and in this case, the path is *node/5*. See also [Alias](#). See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more information.

### Permission

The ability to perform some action on the site, such as editing a particular type of [content](#), or viewing user profiles. See also [Role](#). See [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

### Reference field

A [field](#) that represents a relationship between an [entity](#) and one or more other entities, which may be the same [entity type](#) or a different type. For example, on a farmers market site, a recipe content item might have a reference field to the vendor (also a content item) that posted the recipe. [Taxonomy term](#) fields are also reference fields. See [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#) for more information.

### Region

A defined area of a page where [content](#) can be placed, such as the header, footer, main content area, left sidebar, etc. Regions are defined by [themes](#), and the content displayed in each region is contained in [blocks](#). See [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#) for more information.

### Responsive

A site or [theme](#) is said to be responsive if it adjusts its presentation in response to the size of the browser screen, printer, or other media output type. See also [Breakpoint](#). See [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#) for more information.

### Revision

A record of the past or present state of a [contententity](#), as it is edited over time. See [#### 2.6, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

### Role

A named set of [permissions](#) that can be applied to a [user account](#). See [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

### Security update

An [update](#) that fixes a security-related bug, such as a hacking vulnerability. See [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#) for more information.



## State

Information of a temporary nature about the current state of your site, such as the time when [cron](#) was last run, etc. See also [Content](#) and [Configuration](#). See [##### 1.5, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

## Taxonomy

The process of classifying [content](#). See [##### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

## Taxonomy term

A term used to classify [content](#), such as a tag or a category. See also [Vocabulary](#). See [##### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

## Text format

[Configuration](#) that defines the processing that happens to user-entered text before it is shown in the browser. This might include stripping or limiting HTML tags, or turning URLs into links. See [##### 6.15, "Concept: Text Formats and Editors"](#) for more information.

## Theme

Software and asset files (images, CSS, PHP code, and/or templates) that determine the style and layout of the site. The Drupal project distinguishes between [core](#) and [contributed](#) themes. See [##### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

## UI

Acronym for [User Interface](#).

## Update

A newer version of your site's software, either [Drupal core](#) or a [module](#) or [theme](#). See also [Security update](#). See [##### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#) for more information.

## User

A person interacting with the site, either logged-in or [anonymous](#). See [##### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

## User interface

The text, styles, and images that are visible on a site, separated logically into the user interface for site visitors and the administrative user interface.

### User one (User 1)

The initial [user](#) account that is created when you install the site (whose ID number is 1).

It automatically has all [permissions](#), even if it is not assigned an administrative [role](#). See

[#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#) for more information.

### View

A formatted listing of data; typically, the data comes from [contententities](#). For example,

on a farmers market site, you might create a [content item](#) for each vendor. You could

then make view that generates a listing page that shows a thumbnail image and short description of each vendor, linking to the full-page content item. Using the same data, you could also make a view that generates a new vendors block, which would show information from the most recently added vendors. See [#### 2.4, "#####: #####"](#)

[#####](#) for more information.

### View mode

A set of [field formatterconfiguration](#) for all of the [fields](#) of a [contententity](#), some of which

may be hidden. Each [entity subtype](#) can have one or more view modes defined; for

example, [content types](#) typically have *Full* and *Teaser* view modes, where the *Teaser* view mode displays fewer or trimmed-down fields. See [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and](#)

[Formatters"](#) for more information.

### Vocabulary

A group of [taxonomy terms](#) to choose from when classifying [content](#) in a particular way,

such as the list of all of the vendor categories on a farmers market site. Technically, vocabularies are the [entity subtype](#) for the taxonomy term [entity type](#). See [#### 6.5,](#)

["Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

### Widget

See [Field widget](#).

### Wizard

A web form that allows you to fill in a few values, and creates something with sensible defaults based on the values you chose. For example, there are wizards for creating [views](#)

of different types. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) for more information.

## WYSIWYG

Acronym for *What You See is What You Get*, meaning a method for editing [content](#) where what you see on the editing screen closely resembles the final product. See [#### 6.16, "Configuring Text Formats and Editors"](#) for more information.

---

# هی امن

## A

Account setting, 44  
  configuring, 44  
Admin Toolbar module  
  downloading, 169  
  installing, 169  
Administration  
  overview, 35  
Administrative interface, 209  
  using to update the core software, 209  
Administrative menu  
  overview, 35, 81  
Administrative user account  
  overview, 109  
Ajax, 223  
  definition, 223  
Alias, 223  
  definition, 52  
  overview, 52  
Anonymous, 223  
  definition, 223  
Anonymous user  
  overview, 109  
Apache web server, 22  
  version requirements, 22  
Appearance menu entry, 35  
  administrative menu, 242  
Attributions for this document, 109  
Authenticated user  
  overview, 109  
Author, 122  
  assigning, 122  
Automated Cron module  
  configuring, 204  
  overview, 203

## B

Backup, 198  
  overview, 198  
Bartik theme, 47  
  configuring, 1  
  regions in, 1  
Basic page, 53  
  creating, 53  
Block

  creating, 125  
  creating from a view, 143  
  definition, 14  
  entity type, 125  
  overview, 128  
  placing in a region, 128  
Breadcrumb region  
  overview, 11  
Breakpoint, 223  
  definition, 105  
  overview, 105  
Bug, 206, 218  
  reporting, 206, 218  
Bundle, 223  
  definition, 223

## C

Cache, 196  
  clearing, 223  
  definition, 195  
  overview, 196  
  rebuilding, 218, 220  
Chatting online, 107  
CKEditor module, 107  
  configuring, 107  
CKEditor text editor, 107  
  default assignment to text format, 107  
CMS (Content Management System), 223  
  definition, 1  
  overview, 1  
Coder tool, 23  
  overview, 23  
Color scheme, 47  
  configuring, 47  
Comment entity type, 14  
  overview, 14  
Comment module, 14  
  entity type, 14  
Community, 218  
  connecting with, 218  
Composer tool, 23  
  overview, 23  
  using to download modules, 186  
  using to download the core software, 186  
  using to download themes, 186  
Composite page, 16  
  creating with modular content, 16  
Configuration, 6  
  as a type of data, 6

- 189
- copying, 224
- definition, 189
- deploying, 192
- synchronizing between development and live site, 149, 157
- translating, 150
- Configuration Manager module
  - using to synchronize the configuration between a development and live site, 192
- Configuration menu entry
  - administrative menu, 35
- Configuration Translation module
  - installing, 149
  - overview, 150
- Configuring 152
  - content translation, 59
  - home page, 38
  - site, 107
  - text format, 107
- Contact form entity type
  - overview, 14
- Contact module
  - entity type, 14
- Content 62
  - adding to menu while editing, 8
  - as a type of data, 122
  - assigning author, 198
  - backing up, 224
  - definition, 97
  - displaying, 59, 57
  - editing, 92
  - editing entry form, 14
  - entity type, 35
  - finding, 16
  - modular, 149, 155
  - translating, 152
  - translation, 242
- Content attributions for this document, 242
- Content display
  - changing, 97
  - managing, 97
- Content editing form
  - overview, 97
- Content entity type
  - overview, 14
- Content item
  - creating, 224
  - definition, 33
- Content list view
  - creating, 134
- Content Management System (CMS)
  - definition, 223, 224
  - overview, 1
- Content menu entry
  - administrative menu, 35
- Content reference field
  - adding, 80
  - overview, 88
- Content region
  - overview, 11
- Content structure
  - planning, 17
- Content Translation module
  - installing, 149
  - overview, 150
- Content type
  - adding, 75
  - adding field to, 224
  - definition, 73
  - deleting, 73
- Contextual filters part of view
  - overview, 152
- Contextual link
  - definition, 224
  - overview, 35
- Contributed
  - definition, 224
- Contributed module
  - definition, 169, 179, 186
  - downloading, 161
  - evaluating, 181
  - finding, 169
  - installing, 3
  - overview, 211
  - updating, 211
- Contributed theme
  - definition, 175, 179, 186
  - downloading, 179
  - enabling, 172
  - evaluating, 192
  - finding, 175
  - installing, 215
  - updating, 218
- Contributing to the project, 218
- Copyright for this document, 242
- Core module
  - overview, 3
- Core software

- installation requirements, 22
  - installing, 209
  - updating,
- Core theme 4
  - overview,
- Country setting 38
  - configuring,
- Cron command scheduler
  - definition, 224
- Cron task 204
  - configuring, 224
  - definition, 203
  - overview,
- Cross-site scripting (XSS) 106
  - preventing,
- Custom block 125
  - creating, 14
  - entity type,
- Custom block module 14
  - entity type,
- Custom menu 61
  - overview,
- Custom theme 175
  - enabling, 175
  - installing, 4
  - overview,
- D**
- Data type 6
  - configuration, 6
  - content, 6
  - overview, 6
  - session, 6
  - state,
- Database 198
  - backing up,
  - configuring during the installation process, 22
  - installation requirements, 22
- Deployment workflow 182
  - overview,
- Devel tool 23
  - overview,
- Development site 183
  - making, 182
  - overview,
  - synchronizing with live site, 192
- Disk space 22
  - installation requirements,
- Display part of view 132
  - overview,
- Distribution 225
  - definition, 6
  - full-featured,
  - overview, 6
  - quick-start,
- Documentation 221
  - about Drupal, 221
  - about the Drupal API, 221
  - available on drupal.org, 221
  - contributed by the Drupal Community, 221
  - Drupal Planet blog posts, 221
  - for programmers,
- Downloading 25, 186
  - core software, 186
  - module, 179
  - module or theme files manually, 175, 186
  - theme,
- Drupal Association 7
  - overview,
- Drupal Console tool 25
  - overview,
- Drupal content management system
  - overview,
  - server requirements, 1
- Drupal core 225
  - definition, 28
  - installing, 1
  - overview, 25
  - preparing install,
- Drupal licensing 5
  - overview,
- Drupal project 218
  - connecting with,
  - overview,
- Drupal training 221
  - resources for,
- Drupal user group 218
  - finding,
- Drupal.org website
  - downloading and installing module from, 189
  - downloading and installing theme from, 175
  - downloading modules and themes from, 1
  - finding and evaluating modules on, 181
  - finding and evaluating themes on, 172
- Drush tool

overview, 23  
 using to download and install module, 169  
 using to download and install theme, 175  
 using to install the core software, 25  
 using to uninstall module, 41  
 using to update module, 211  
 using to update the core software, 209  
 using to update theme, 215  
 Dynamic Page Cache module  
 overview, 195

**E** 55, 57  
 Editing content, 55, 57  
 Editor 107  
     configuring, 107  
 Editor module 107  
     configuring, 107  
 Editorial Workflow  
     overview, 20  
 Effect 100, 101  
     image, 100, 101  
 Email address 38  
     configuring, 38  
 Enabling 169  
     module, 175  
     theme, 175  
 Entity 225  
     definition, 14  
     overview, 14  
 Entity reference field 88  
     adding, 88  
 Entity subtype 225  
     definition, 14  
     overview, 14  
 Entity type 225  
     definition, 14  
     overview, 14  
 Entity view mode 96  
     overview, 96  
 Error 200  
     log report, 200  
 Error page 38  
     configuring, 38  
 Event 218  
     Drupal, 218  
 Extend menu entry 35  
     administrative menu, 35

**F**  
 Farmers market  
     usage scenario for this document, ۱۱۱۱  
 Feature 189  
     copying, 189  
     deploying, 189  
 Featured regions 111  
     overview, 111  
 Field 75  
     adding to content type, 80  
     content reference, 226  
     definition, 88  
     for adding references, 14, 91  
     overview, 80  
     reference, 80  
     taxonomy term reference, 80  
     user reference, 80  
 Field bundle 226  
     definition, 226  
 Field formatter 226  
     definition, 96  
     overview, 96  
 Field module 3  
     overview, 3  
 Field UI module 3  
     overview, 3  
 Field widget 226  
     definition, 226  
 Fields part of view 132  
     overview, 132  
 File 198  
     backing up, 198  
 File module 14  
     entity type, 14  
 Filter criteria part of view 132  
     overview, 132  
 Filter module 107  
     configuring, 107  
 First day of week 38  
     configuring, 38  
 Footer menu 61  
     overview, 61  
 Footer regions 11  
     overview, 11  
 Form 91  
     overview, 91  
 Form entity type 14  
     overview, 14

Format part of view  
overview, 132

Formatter 226  
definition, 96  
overview,

Forum 220  
user support,

FOSS (Free and Open Source Software) 226  
definition, 7  
overview,

Free and Open Source Software (FOSS) 226  
definition, 7  
overview,

Front page 38, 59  
configuring, 59

Full editor, 6  
Full-featured distribution  
overview,

Functionality 169  
extending,

## G

Git tool 23  
overview, 223

Glossary, 226  
GNU General Public License  
definition, 9  
overview,

GPL (General Public License or GNU General  
Public License) 226  
definition, 9  
overview,

Group 218  
finding,

Guiding scenario for this document (farmers  
market), 111

## H

Header region 11  
overview,

Help menu entry 35  
administrative menu,

Help region 11  
overview,

Hiawatha web server 22  
version requirements,

Highlighted region 11  
overview,

Home page

configuring, 59  
creating, 59  
HTML5 picture tag 105  
and responsive images,

## I

Image 101  
resizing,

Image effect 100  
overview,

Image field 75  
adding,

Image module 134  
creating a view,

Image style 101  
creating, 227  
definition, 100  
overview, 105  
responsive, 57

In-place editor, 28  
Installation process, 28

Installation profile, 22  
Installation requirements  
database, 22  
disk space, 22

overview, 22  
PHP programming language, 22  
web server,

Installer tool 28  
running,

Installing 22, 25  
core software, 182  
development site, 169  
module, 182  
staging site, 175  
theme,

Interest group 218  
finding,

Interface Translation module 150  
installing, 149  
overview,

Internal Page Cache module 195  
overview,

Internet Relay Chat (IRC) 218, 220  
using to chat online,

IRC (Internet Relay Chat) 218, 220  
using to chat online,



## L

Label 157  
 translating,  
 LAMP (Linux Apache MySQL PHP) 227  
 definition,  
 Language 150  
 adding,  
 Language module 150  
 installing, 149  
 overview,  
 Layout 12  
 planning,  
 Learning resource 221  
 link to,  
 Legal 9  
 overview,  
 Licensing 9  
 overview,  
 Linux Apache MySQL PHP (LAMP) 227  
 definition,  
 Listing content 134  
 using Views module to,  
 Live site 192  
 synchronizing with development site,  
 Locale setting 38  
 configuring,  
 Log 227  
 definition, 200  
 overview,  
 Logo image 47  
 configuring,

## M

Maintenance mode 166  
 disabling, 166  
 enabling, 166  
 overview,  
 Manage administrative menu 35  
 overview,  
 Manually downloading module or theme files 179  
 overview,  
 Menu 62  
 adding a link to page, 61  
 administrative, 61  
 custom, 227  
 definition, 61  
 footer, 61  
 main,

overview, 61  
 user account, 61  
 Menu items 65  
 reordering,  
 Menu region 11  
 overview,  
 Menu UI module 3  
 overview,  
 Metadata 83  
 creating,  
 Microsoft IIS web server 22  
 version requirements,  
 Modular content 16  
 overview,  
 Module 169  
 Admin Toolbar, 107  
 CKEditor, 14  
 Comment, 192  
 Configuration Manager, 149, 150  
 Configuration Translation, 14  
 Contact, 149, 150  
 Content Translation, 3, 169  
 contributed, 3  
 core, 169  
 custom, 14  
 Custom Block, 227  
 definition, 169, 179, 186  
 downloading, 195  
 Dynamic Page Cache, 107  
 Editor, 40, 169  
 enabling, 161  
 evaluating, 3  
 Field, 3  
 Field UI, 14  
 File, 107  
 Filter, 161  
 finding, 134  
 Image, 40, 169  
 installing, 149, 150  
 Interface Translation, 195  
 Internal Page Cache, 149, 150  
 Language, 3  
 Menu UI, 3, 14  
 Node, 3  
 overview, 14  
 Taxonomy, 41  
 uninstalling unused, 169, 175  
 Update Manager, 211  
 updating,

3, 14  
 User, 3, 134, 138, 143  
 Views, 3  
 Views UI,  
 Multilingual modules  
 enabling, 150  
 installing,  
 MySQL database  
 version requirements, 22

## N

Navigation  
 changing the order of menu items, 65  
 linking menu to page,  
 Nginx web server  
 version requirements, 22  
 Node module  
 entity type, 3  
 overview, 14

## P

Page  
 adding to menu while editing, 62  
 composite,  
 Page cache  
 overview, 195  
 Path  
 definition, 227  
 overview, 52  
 People menu entry  
 administrative menu, 35  
 Performance  
 improving, 200  
 log report, 201  
 status report,  
 Permission  
 changing, 119  
 changing role, 227  
 definition, 117  
 denying, 117  
 granting, 109  
 overview,  
 PHP programming language  
 version requirements, 22  
 PHP version  
 status report, 201  
 Planning  
 site layout, 12  
 PostgreSQL database  
 version requirements, 22

Primary menu  
 overview,  
 Profile  
 installation, 28  
 Published flag  
 overview, 20

## Q

Quick editor, 57  
 Quick-start distribution  
 overview, 8

## R

Reference field  
 adding, 80  
 content, 228  
 definition, 80  
 overview, 80  
 taxonomy term,  
 user, 80  
 Region  
 breadcrumb, 11  
 content, 228  
 definition, 11  
 featured, 11  
 footer, 11  
 header, 11  
 help, 11  
 highlighted, 11  
 menu, 11  
 overview, 128  
 placing a block in,  
 primary menu, 11  
 secondary menu,  
 sidebar,  
 Regional setting  
 configuring, 38  
 Relationships, part of view  
 overview, 132  
 Report  
 Recent log messages, 200  
 Reports menu entry  
 administrative menu, 35  
 Resource  
 documentation and training, 221  
 Responsive  
 definition, 228  
 Responsive image style  
 overview, 105

- Revision 228
  - definition, 20
  - overview,
- Role 112
  - administrator, 112
  - anonymous user, 112
  - authenticated user, 119
  - changing, 117
  - changing permission, 112
  - creating, 228
  - definition, 109
  - overview,
- S**
- Scenario for this document (farmers market)
  - overview, 115
- Secondary menu region
  - overview,
- Security 117
  - assigning permission, 106
  - cross-site scripting, 44
  - managing user accounts, 206
  - overview, 201
  - status report, 106
  - text format, 44
  - user account settings, 191
  - user one account,
- Security announcement 208
  - subscribing to by email, 208
  - subscribing to on Twitter,
- Security bug 206
  - reporting,
- Security team 206
  - overview,
- Security update 211, 215
  - applying, 228
  - definition, 208
  - keeping track of,
- Server information 201
  - status report,
- Session 6
  - as a type of data,
- Sidebar regions
  - overview,
- Site email address 38
  - configuring,
- Site information 201
  - status report,
- Site layout
  - planning, 12
- Site name 38
  - configuring,
- Site plan 17
  - content structure,
- Site slogan 38
  - configuring,
- Site tagline 38
  - configuring,
- Slogan 38
  - configuring,
- Software dependencies 186
  - managing,
- Software version 201
  - status report,
- Sort criteria part of view 132
  - overview,
- SQLite database 22
  - version requirements,
- Staging site 183
  - making, 182
  - overview,
- State 6
  - as a type of data, 228
  - definition,
- Status report 201
  - overview,
- Structure menu entry 35
  - administrative menu,
- Style 100, 101
  - image,
- Support 220
  - finding,
- T**
- Tagline 38
  - configuring,
- Taxonomy 83
  - creating, 229
  - definition, 81
  - overview,
- Taxonomy module 14
  - entity type,
- Taxonomy term 229
  - definition, 14
  - overview,
- Taxonomy term reference field 88
  - adding, 80
  - overview,

- Term (taxonomy)
  - fixed list, 81
  - free tagging, 84
  - overview, 81
- Term list 83
  - creating, 223
- Terminology (Glossary), 223
- Text format 107
  - configuring, 229
  - definition, 106
  - overview, 107
- Theme 47
  - configuring, 175
  - contributed, 4
  - core, 4, 175
  - custom, 229
  - definition, 175, 179, 186
  - downloading, 175
  - enabling, 172
  - evaluating, 172
  - finding, 175
  - installing, 4
  - overview, 11
  - regions in, 4
  - third-party, 215
  - updating, 215
- Third-party theme 4
  - overview, 4
- Time zone setting 38
  - configuring, 38
- Tool 23
  - Coder, 23
  - Composer, 23
  - Devel, 23
  - drupal console, 23
  - Drush, 23
  - Git, 23
- Toolbar 35
  - overview, 35
- Training 221
  - Global Training Days, 221
  - resource, 221
  - Training Marketplace, 221
- Translating 157
  - configuration, 157
  - content, 157
  - label, 149
  - overview, 157
  - view, 157
- Troubleshooting 200
  - log report, 201
  - status report, 201
- U**
- UI (User Interface) 229
  - definition, 229
- Uniform Resource Locator (URL) 52
  - overview, 52
- Uninstalling 41
  - unused modules, 41
- Unpublished flag 20
  - overview, 20
- Update 229
  - definition, 208
  - keeping track of, 208
  - overview, 201
  - status report, 201
- Update Manager module 208
  - overview, 169
  - using to install module, 175
  - using to install theme, 175
- Update status 201
  - status report, 201
- URL (Uniform Resource Locator) 52
  - overview, 52
- URL alias 52
  - overview, 52
- URL field 75
  - adding, 75
- Usage scenario for this document (farmers market), 111
- User 111
  - administrative, 111
  - configuring account setting, 44
  - creating account, 113
  - definition, 109
  - overview, 111
  - root, 111
  - user one, 111
- User account menu 61
  - overview, 61
- User group 218
  - finding, 218
- User interface 149
  - translating, 149
- User Interface (UI) 229
  - definition, 229
- User module

entity type, 14  
 overview, 3  
 User one, 229  
 definition, 229  
 User profile entity type, 14  
 overview, 14  
 User reference field, 88  
 adding, 80  
 overview, 80  
 User role, 119  
 changing, 112  
 creating, 109  
 overview, 109  
 User-entered content, 106  
 filtering, 106

**V**

View, 143  
 adding block display to, 16  
 and modular content, 132  
 contextual filters part, 134  
 creating, 230  
 definition, 132  
 display part, 138  
 duplicating, 132  
 fields part, 132  
 filter criteria part, 132  
 format part, 131  
 overview, 132  
 parts of, 132  
 relationships part, 132  
 sort criteria part, 137  
 translating, 137  
 View mode, 230  
 definition, 96  
 overview, 96  
 Views module, 143  
 adding to a view, 134  
 creating a view, 138  
 duplicating a view, 131  
 overview, 131  
 Views UI module, 3  
 overview, 3  
 Vocabulary, 83  
 creating, 230  
 definition, 14, 81  
 overview, 81

**W**

Web installer, 28  
 running, 25  
 using to install the core software, 25  
 Web server, 22  
 installation requirements, 22  
 What You See Is What You Get (WYSIWYG), 107  
 configuring editor, 230  
 definition, 230  
 Widget, 226, 230  
 definition, 91  
 overview, 91  
 Wizard, 230  
 definition, 230  
 WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get), 107  
 configuring editor, 230  
 definition, 230

**X**

XSS (Cross-site scripting), 106  
 preventing, 106

---

# همی مض A. تسویپ

## A.1. Guide-Wide Attributions

This guide was written by contributors to the Drupal open-source project, and is licensed under the [CC BY-SA 2.0](#) license. See [#### i.1, "#### #####"](#) for more information. Details

about the contributors for guide-wide tasks are below. For individual topics, the attributions for writing, editing, and/or translating are at the end of each topic.

### Project coordination of original (English, Drupal 8) text

Writing of the initial version of this guide was coordinated by the following people:

- [Amber Matz](#) - Volunteer coordination and project management
- [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) - Content oversight
- [Joe Shindelar](#) - Content oversight
- [Antje Lorch](#) - Content oversight

### Writing, editing, and testing of original text

The following people contributed to guide-wide writing:

- The glossary was written and adapted by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), with parts from ["Glossary"](#), ["Overview of Configuration \(vs. other types of information\)"](#), and ["Working with breakpoints in Drupal 8"](#), each copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).
- The index was improved and curated by [Anna van Raaphorst](#).
- Topic summaries were written by [Joey Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

Guide-wide editing was done by the following people:

- [Amber Matz](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#)

- [Anna van Raaphorst](#)
- [Antje Lorch](#)
- [Balu Ertl](#)
- [Boris Doesborg](#)
- [Charles Leverington](#)
- [chirag shah](#)
- [Grant Dunham](#)
- [Jennifer Hodgdon](#)
- [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#)
- [Joey Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) — who copy edited the vast majority of the User Guide
- [Kamal Kant Pansari](#) at [Intelliswift](#)
- [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#)
- [Swarad Mokal](#) at [Blisstering Solutions](#)

The content was tested by:

- [Zach Carter](#)
- A workshop organized by the ["Spokane Drupal User Group" on groups.drupal.org](#), with students from the Web Development Certificate program at [Spokane Community College](#)

## Images

Most of the images in the guide are screen captures from the Drupal software, generated by software written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

The word Drupal, the Drupicon logo (which appears as part of several images throughout the guide), and the Drupal wordmark logo (which is part of the cover image), are [registered trademarks of Dries Buytaert](#).

The cover image is a CC BY-SA 2.0 licensed illustration by [Amanda Luker](#) at [Advomatic](#).

The Anytown Farmers Market logo, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a CC BY-SA 2.0 licensed illustration by Justin Harrell at [Drupalize.Me](#).

The honey bee image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by [John Severns](#) at the [English Wikipedia project](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The farm image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by Xianmin Chang via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The salad image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by [Yinan Chen](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The carrot image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is public domain image [K11611-1](#) by Stephen Ausmus at the [Agricultural Research Service of the United States Department of Agriculture](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

## Translation into Persian

The Persian translation of this guide was coordinated by:

- [Navid Emami](#)